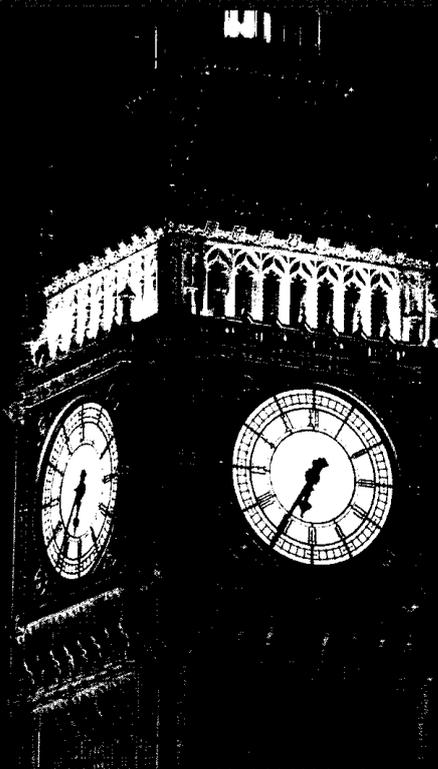


**Berlitz**®

# АНГЛИЙСКИЙ ЯЗЫК *базовый курс*



*Все, что Вам  
нужно для  
простого  
общения на  
английском  
языке*



# Английский язык

*Базовый курс  
с 3 аудиокассетами*



**Berlitz Publishing Company, Inc.**  
**Москва • "Живой язык" • 2002**

**УДК 811.111(075.4)**  
**ББК 81.2Англ-9**  
**А64**

**А64** Английский язык. Базовый курс. – М.: Живой язык, 2002. – 196 с.

**ISBN 5-8033-0118-3** (с 3 аудиокассетами)

Основной задачей данного пособия является обучение разговорному английскому языку по методике Berlitz, разработанной более 120 лет назад и ставшей популярной во всем мире. Суть методики — непосредственное погружение обучающегося в разговорную речь. Жизненные, полные юмора диалоги помогут начинающим усвоить грамматические правила, выучить первые фразы и выражения, пополнить словарный запас. Структура курса позволяет в краткие сроки выработать и закрепить практические речевые навыки. К учебнику прилагаются 3 аудиокассеты.

**УДК 811.111(075.4)**  
**ББК 81.2Англ-9**

*Учебное издание*  
Английский язык. Базовый курс.

Изд. лиц. ЛР № 065389 от 08.09.97 г. Подписано в печать 27.03.02. Формат 70×90<sup>1</sup>/<sub>11</sub>. Бум. офсетная. Печать офсетная. Гарнитура “Optima”.  
Усл. печ. л. 17,5. Тираж 3500 экз. Заказ № 2331

ООО “Живой язык”  
109193, Москва, ул. 5-я Кожуховская, д. 13, стр. 1  
Почтовый адрес: г. Москва, 113162, а/я 14.  
[www.lll.ru](http://www.lll.ru)  
e-mail: [lll@lll.ru](mailto:lll@lll.ru)

Отпечатано с готовых диапозитивов в ГМП «Первая Образцовая типография»  
Министерства Российской Федерации по делам печати, телерадиовещания  
и средств массовых коммуникаций. 113054, Москва, Валовая, 28

**ISBN 5-8033-0118-3** (с 3 аудиокассетами)

© 2001 by Berlitz Publishing Company, Inc.

Berlitz International, Inc., и его дочерние предприятия так же, как и Центры Berlitz по всему миру, являются единственными владельцами прав на название Berlitz, используемое в связи с обучением языку, разговорниками, учебниками и справочной языковой литературой, аудиозаписями (CD и кассетами). Любое использование имени Berlitz строгойше запрещено, кроме как по специальному разрешению, оговоренному контрактом с вышеупомянутой компанией. Приобретение и воспроизведение данной книги, а также любого другого издания под маркой Berlitz, ни при каких обстоятельствах не дает право покупателю, как и любому другому лицу, использовать имя Berlitz в связи с обучением языку. Репродуцирование (воспроизведение) данного издания любым способом без договора с издательством преследуется по закону.

Выпущено в России издательством “Живой язык” по лицензионному соглашению с Berlitz Publishing Company, Inc.  
400 Alexander Park, Princeton, NJ 08540 USA  
9-13 Grosvenor St., London W1X 9FB UK

# СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

Introduction		x
Pronunciation		xii

## Lesson one

---

<b>Recording</b>	<i>Nice to meet you!</i>	1
	<i>Who's this?</i>	2
<b>Action Questions</b>		2
<b>Exercise</b>		3
<b>Recording</b>	<i>What's this?</i>	4
<b>Action Questions</b>		4
<b>Recording</b>	<i>He and she</i>	5
<b>Action Questions</b>		5
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Mr. Morgan is from New York</i>	6
<b>Action Questions</b>		6
<b>Exercises</b>		6-8
<b>Text</b>	<i>Numbers</i>	9
<b>Exercise</b>		9
<b>Vocabulary</b>		10-11

## Lesson two

---

<b>Recording</b>	<i>The plane is in New York</i>	12
<b>Action Questions</b>		12
<b>Text</b>	<i>What's in this picture?</i>	13
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Where's the small book?</i>	14
<b>Action Questions</b>		14
<b>Exercise</b>		14
<b>Text</b>	<i>Numbers</i>	15
<b>Exercise</b>		15
<b>Recording</b>	<i>What's that over there?</i>	16
<b>Vocabulary</b>		17-18

## Lesson three

---

<b>Recording</b>	<i>Whose chair is this?</i>	19
<b>Grammar</b>		20

<b>Action Questions</b>		20
<b>Exercises</b>		20–21
<b>Recording</b>	<i>The Morgan family</i>	22
<b>Action Questions</b>		22
<b>Exercise</b>		23
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Mr. Morgan's office</i>	24
<b>Grammar</b>		24
<b>Action Questions</b>		25
<b>Exercises</b>		25–26
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Tony is a waiter</i>	27
<b>Action Questions</b>		27
<b>Exercises</b>		28
<b>Grammar</b>		29
<b>Exercise</b>		29
<b>Text</b>	<i>More numbers</i>	30
<b>Exercise</b>		30
<b>Recording</b>	<i>How are you?</i>	31
<b>Vocabulary</b>		32–33

## Lesson **four**

---

		<b>34</b>
<b>Grammar</b>		34
<b>Text</b>	<i>Cigarettes, cigars, and matches</i>	34
<b>Grammar</b>		35
<b>Exercise</b>		35
<b>Recording</b>	<i>How many people are there?</i>	36
<b>Grammar</b>		36
<b>Action Questions</b>		37
<b>Exercise</b>		37
<b>Recording</b>	<i>There isn't any milk in the bottle</i>	38
<b>Grammar</b>		38
<b>Action Questions</b>		38
<b>Exercises</b>		39–40
<b>Text</b>	<i>Numbers 100 – 1,000</i>	41
<b>Exercise</b>		41
<b>Text</b>	<i>How much is it?</i>	42
<b>Exercise</b>		42
<b>Vocabulary</b>		43–44

## Revision **one**

---

<b>Text</b>	<i>Who's sitting at the desk?</i>	45
-------------	-----------------------------------	----

<b>Exercises</b>		45–48
<b>Grammar</b>		49
<b>Exercises</b>		49–50
<b>Grammar</b>		51
<b>Exercises</b>		51–53
<b>Text</b>	<i>It's small, but not from Japan</i>	53
<b>Exercise</b>		53
<b>Grammar</b>		54
<b>Exercise</b>		54
<b>Grammar</b>		55
<b>Exercise</b>		55
<b>Review Test</b>		56–57

## Lesson **five**

---

		<b>58</b>
<b>Text</b>	<i>What time is it?</i>	58
<b>Recording</b>	<i>The flight attendant is speaking to them</i>	59
<b>Grammar</b>		59
<b>Action Questions</b>		59
<b>Exercises</b>		59–60
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Mr. Morgan is on the phone</i>	61
<b>Action Questions</b>		61
<b>Exercise</b>		61
<b>Recording</b>	<i>There isn't anything on the chair</i>	62
<b>Grammar</b>		62
<b>Action Questions</b>		63
<b>Exercises</b>		63–64
<b>Vocabulary</b>		65–66

## Lesson **six**

---

		<b>67</b>
<b>Recording</b>	<i>The days of the week</i>	67
<b>Action Questions</b>		67
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Today is Wednesday</i>	68
<b>Action Questions</b>		68
<b>Exercise</b>		69
<b>Text</b>	<i>The store is closed on Sunday</i>	69
<b>Text</b>	<i>At the store</i>	70
<b>Grammar</b>		70
<b>Text</b>	<i>Questions with have</i>	71
<b>Exercise</b>		71
<b>Vocabulary</b>		72–73

## Lesson **seven**

---

<b>Grammar</b>		74
<b>Exercises</b>		74-75
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Janet goes out on Saturday evening</i>	76
<b>Action Questions</b>		76
<b>Exercises</b>		77
<b>Grammar</b>		78
<b>Exercises</b>		78-79
<b>Vocabulary</b>		80-81

## Lesson **eight**

---

<b>Recording</b>	<i>An evening out with the Morgans</i>	82
<b>Action Questions</b>		82
<b>Recording</b>	<i>At the restaurant</i>	83
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Already or not yet?</i>	84
<b>Action questions</b>		84
<b>Exercise</b>		84
<b>Grammar</b>	<i>He's showing her the menu</i>	85
<b>Exercise</b>		85
<b>Grammar</b>	<i>Formation of questions</i>	86
<b>Exercise</b>		86
<b>Text</b>	<i>Waiting for dinner</i>	87
<b>Grammar</b>		88
<b>Exercises</b>		88-90
<b>Grammar</b>		91
<b>Exercises</b>		91
<b>Grammar</b>		92
<b>Exercise</b>	<i>What's Janet doing?</i>	92
<b>Vocabulary</b>		93-94

## Revision **two**

---

<b>Review Test</b>		95
		95-96

## Lesson **nine**

---

<b>Recording</b>	<i>Mr. Morgan was away last week</i>	97
<b>Action Questions</b>		97

<b>Exercises</b>		98–99
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Mr. Morgan was very busy last week</i>	100
<b>Grammar</b>		100
<b>Action Questions</b>		101
<b>Exercises</b>		101–102
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Mr. Morgan worked hard last week</i>	103
<b>Action Questions</b>		103
<b>Grammar</b>		104
<b>Exercises</b>		104–105
<b>Recording</b>	<i>At the theater</i>	106
<b>Grammar</b>		106
<b>Action Questions</b>		107
<b>Exercise</b>		107
<b>Grammar</b>		108
<b>Exercise</b>		108
<b>Vocabulary</b>		109–110

## Lesson

---

<b>Grammar</b>		111
<b>Exercise</b>		111
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Trying on the jackets</i>	112
<b>Action questions</b>		112
<b>Recording</b>	<i>The tailor was out to lunch</i>	113
<b>Action Questions</b>		113
<b>Exercises</b>		114
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Speaking to the tailor</i>	115
<b>Action Questions</b>		116
<b>Grammar</b>		116
<b>Exercise</b>		117
<b>Text</b>	<i>Cash or charge?</i>	118
<b>Action Questions</b>		119
<b>Exercise</b>		119
<b>Grammar</b>		120
<b>Exercise</b>		120
<b>Grammar</b>		121
<b>Exercises</b>		121
<b>Grammar</b>		122
<b>Exercises</b>		122–123
<b>Vocabulary</b>		124–125

## Lesson

---

<b>Recording</b>	<i>Janet is going to go on vacation</i>	126
------------------	---	-----

<b>Action Questions</b>		126
<b>Exercise</b>		127
<b>Grammar</b>		128
<b>Exercise</b>		128
<b>Grammar</b>		129
<b>Exercises</b>		130–131
<b>Grammar</b>		132
<b>Exercise</b>		132
<b>Recording</b>	<i>Finding a taxi</i>	133
<b>Action Questions</b>		133
<b>Grammar</b>		134
<b>Exercise</b>		134
<b>Grammar</b>		135
<b>Exercise</b>		135
<b>Vocabulary</b>		136–137

## Lesson **twelve**

---

**138**

<b>Recording</b>	<i>A phone call for Mr. Morgan</i>	138–139
<b>Action Questions</b>		139
<b>Exercise</b>		140
<b>Grammar</b>		141
<b>Exercises</b>		142
<b>Recording</b>	<i>A long-distance call</i>	143–144
<b>Action Questions</b>		144
<b>Exercise</b>		145
<b>Grammar</b>		146
<b>Exercise</b>		146
<b>Text</b>	<i>Are there any messages?</i>	147–148
<b>Action Questions</b>		148
<b>Exercise</b>		149
<b>Grammar</b>		150
<b>Exercise</b>		150
<b>Text</b>	<i>I think it was Mr. Gibson</i>	151
<b>Action Questions</b>		151
<b>Exercise</b>		152
<b>Grammar</b>		153
<b>Exercises</b>		153–154
<b>Vocabulary</b>		155–156
<b>Key to Written Exercises and Action Questions</b>		159–178

---

# ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

•••

## **Английский язык с Berlitz**

Цель **Berlitz** — помочь Вам как можно быстрее и легче освоить английский язык.

Любой язык существует, в первую очередь, в виде живой разговорной речи. Вот почему уже более ста двадцати лет мы занимаемся обучением навыкам общения.

Наиболее удобным способом общения является *устная речь*. Если Вы хотите говорить по-английски — на каникулах, во время деловых встреч, в компании друзей или в семье — Вам нужно овладеть речевыми навыками.

Лучшей учебной программой является та, в результате которой Вы сможете легко вступить в разговор, поддержать его, другими словами — общаться.

Методика **Berlitz** основана на постепенном изучении языка с помощью хорошо продуманных “шагов”, расположенных по принципу возрастающей сложности. Каждый новый шаг тесно связан с предыдущим. При этом Вам предлагается только та сумма знаний, которая может быть воспринята на данном этапе. В результате Вы осваиваете новый язык постепенно и систематически.

## **Базовый Курс – для быстрого самостоятельного изучения**

Этот курс даст Вам возможность изучать английский язык дома — самостоятельно или с друзьями. Вы сможете достичь результатов немедленно, не тратя времени на чтение бесконечного количества правил.

Слова или грамматические конструкции переводятся при их первом появлении в тексте. Пояснения на русском языке встретятся Вам только в небольшом столбце на полях каждой страницы. Основной

---

раздел — только на английском языке. Это сделано для того, чтобы Вы по привычке не переводили на родной язык все, что слышите.

Если у Вас появятся затруднения или сомнения, когда Вы будете читать текст, — помогут объяснения на полях, но постарайтесь пользоваться ими как можно реже. Во время работы с текстом поля можно закрыть полоской бумаги.

**В Базовом Курсе** Вы не встретите скучных грамматических правил. Мы ограничились краткими, простыми и понятными объяснениями из области грамматики. За время работы над нашим курсом Вам предлагается для закрепления материала выполнить две контрольные работы. Если в такой работе Вы сделаете менее пяти ошибок — можете переходить к следующим урокам, если более — вернитесь к предыдущим урокам и повторите правила, которые Вы усвоили недостаточно хорошо.

### **Содержание Базового Курса**

- а) книга текстов и упражнений на английском языке с примечаниями на русском;
- б) двухчасовой аудиокурс с записями текстов на английском языке.

### **Несколько советов по использованию Базового Курса**

Эти советы помогут Вам извлечь наибольшую пользу из **Базового Курса**:

1. Сначала прослушайте урок, не открывая книгу. Обратите внимание на произношение, ритм и интонации английского языка.
2. Затем прослушайте снова, сверяясь по книге, пока не услышите звуковой сигнал конца урока.
3. Еще раз просмотрите урок, обращая внимание на перевод и примечания на полях.
4. Вернитесь на первую страницу урока. Снова прослушайте диалог, повторяя каждое предложение во время паузы. Повторяйте до тех пор, пока не сможете говорить без опоры на текст.
5. Выключите проигрывающее устройство и читайте вслух, пока не почувствуете, что свободно владеете материалом урока.

После каждого урока Вы найдете короткий раздел, которые называется *Action Question* (“Устные вопросы”). Цель данного раздела — проверить, насколько хорошо Вы усвоили только что

---

---

прослушанный материал. Вы услышите вопрос, за которым следует пауза для Вашего ответа, после чего прозвучит правильный ответ и будет еще одна пауза для его повторения. Конец раздела обозначен двойным звуковым сигналом. Если, отвечая на *Action Questions*, Вы испытываете затруднения, вернитесь к соответствующему уроку и изучите снова его материал. Когда Вы сможете ответить на все вопросы, переходите к письменным упражнениям в учебнике. Проверить, правильно ли Вы их сделали, Вы сможете с помощью ответов в конце книги.

### **Как получить максимальный эффект от *Базового Курса***

Несколько рекомендаций, как получить наилучший результат в кратчайшие сроки:

1. Выделите специальное время для занятий английским языком, желательно, три урока в неделю. Помните, что несколько коротких занятий с регулярным интервалом более эффективны, чем одно длинное.
2. Переходите к следующему уроку, только когда будете уверены, что полностью освоили предыдущий. Курс создан по принципу возрастающей сложности, поэтому Ваша способность усвоить новый раздел будет зависеть от того, насколько хорошо Вы справились с предыдущим. Пройдите каждый урок от начала до конца два или три раза. Языковые навыки формируются только в результате повторения. Недостаточно просто понимать то, что Вы слышите, — Вы должны уметь отвечать быстро, не чувствуя необходимости сначала перевести иностранную речь на русский язык.
3. Всегда говорите вслух. Речевой аппарат необходимо тренировать для того, чтобы он действовал автоматически даже в совершенно незнакомой ситуации. Этого можно добиться, только произнося вслух незнакомые слова. Мысленное повторение или пассивное прослушивание не дают желаемого результата.
4. Помните, что ошибки во время изучения неизбежны. Их допускают даже дети, когда учатся говорить на родном языке. Научитесь извлекать пользу из своих ошибок.
5. Старайтесь как можно точнее воспроизводить английское произношение. Не огорчайтесь, если произнесли что-то неправильно. Только речевая практика позволит Вам говорить чисто, без фонетических ошибок. Просто имитируйте все звуки и конструкции, которые слышите.

Желаем удачи и надеемся, что уроки *Базового Курса* окажутся для Вас полезными и увлекательными.

# ПРОИЗНОШЕНИЕ

## Английский алфавит

A	a	эй	J	j	джей	S	s	эс
B	b	би	K	k	кэй	T	t	ти
C	c	си	L	l	эл	U	u	ю
D	d	ди	M	m	эм	V	v	ви
E	e	и	N	n	эн	W	w	дабл ю
F	f	эф	O	o	оу	X	x	экс
G	g	джи	P	p	пи	Y	y	уай
H	h	эйч	Q	q	кью	Z	z	зэд
I	i	ай	R	r	ар			

## Указания к произношению

### Согласные

Буква	Пример	Приблизительное произношение
b	bus	как <b>б</b> в слове берег
c	city	перед буквами <i>e, i, y</i> как <b>с</b> в слове собака
	car	как <b>к</b> в слове кот в остальных случаях
d	dog	как <b>д</b> в слове дом
f	from	как <b>ф</b> в слове фонарь
g	German	перед буквами <i>e, i, y</i> как <b>дж</b> в слове джин (кроме <i>give, get</i> и некоторых других слов);
	good	в остальных случаях как <b>г</b> в слове город
h	he	выдох, как слабо произнесенный звук <b>х</b> в слове хор
j	Japan	как <b>дж</b> в слове джин
k	kind	как <b>к</b> в слове кот
l	listen	как <b>л</b> в слове лес; всегда произносится несколько мягче чем твердый русский <b>л</b> , но тверже, чем мягкий <b>ль</b>
m	me	как <b>м</b> в слове море
n	no	как <b>н</b> в слове нога
p	player	как <b>п</b> в слове поле
r	red	перед согласным как <b>р</b> , но без вибрации языка (как <b>р</b> в слове жребий);
	car	в остальных случаях не читается, но влияет на чтение предыдущей гласной
s	six	как <b>с</b> в слове сад: в начале слов;
	must	перед согласной буквой;
	sits	в конце слов после глухих согласных;
	italians	как <b>з</b> в слове зал: в конце слов после гласных и звонких согласных;
	exersise	между гласными буквами

t	ten	как т в слове ток
v	very	как в в слове вода
w	window	как у, переходящее в звук в; в русском языке не встречается;
	who	как русский х в сочетании <i>wh</i> перед <i>o</i>
	writer	перед <i>r</i> не произносится
x	taxi	как кс в слове такси
z	zero	как з в слове зебра

### Гласные

a	can	как а, переходящее в звук э, в закрытых слогах;
	car	как долгий звук а в ударных слогах перед буквой <i>r</i>
	take	как эй в открытых слогах
e	yes	как краткий э в слове это в закрытых слогах;
	he	как долгий и в слове ива в открытых слогах;
	take	в конце слова безударная буква <i>e</i> не читается, а лишь обозначает открытый слог
i	in	как краткий и в слове игла в закрытых слогах;
	nice	как ай в открытых слогах
o	not	как о в слове кот в закрытых слогах;
	no	как долгий о, переходящий в у, в открытых слогах;
	some	как краткий а в слове там;
	to	как у в слове туча
u	much	как а в слове мать;
	United	как ю в слове юность;
	pull	как у в слове пуля
y	you	как й в сочетании с другими гласными;
	my	как ай в открытых слогах;
	very	как и в закрытых слогах, а также в конце слов

### Буквосочетания

ai, ay	wait, day	как эй в открытых и закрытых слогах
aw, or	saw, port	как долгий о в слове пол
ch	chair	как ч в слове чек
ck	check	как к в слове чек
ea, ee, ei	real, street	как долгий и в слове ива
er, ir, ur	first	как долгий о, переходящий в э, в безударных слогах;
	Mister	как неопределенный краткий звук э в безударных слогах
ere	here	как долгий и, переходящий в э;
	there	как долгий э, переходящий в а
ew	new	как ю в слове юбка
igh, uy	high, buy	как ай в слове лайка

ng	calling	как <b>н</b> , но задняя часть языка прикасается к небу, воздух выходит через нос; в русском языке не встречается
oa	road	как долгий <b>о</b> , переходящий в <b>у</b>
oi, oy	boy	как <b>ой</b> в слове бойко
oo	book	как краткий <b>у</b> в слове ум (перед буквой <i>k</i> , а также часто перед <i>d</i> и <i>t</i> );
	soon	как долгий <b>у</b> в слове судно в других случаях
ou	about	как <b>ау</b> в слове пауза;
	four	как долгий <b>о</b> в слове пол
ow	now	как <b>ау</b> в слове пауза;
	window	как <b>оу</b> в слове клоун
ph	phone	как <b>ф</b> в слове фонарь
qu	quiet	среднее между <b>ку</b> и <b>кв</b> ; в русском языке не встречается
sh	she	как <b>ш</b> в слове шар
th	this	как <b>в</b> , но кончик языка между зубами; встречается в начале и конце других слов
tion	vacation	как <b>шн</b> в слове шнур, но более раздельно
wh	what	как <b>у</b> , переходящее в звук <b>в</b> , в сочетании <i>wh</i> перед всеми буквами, кроме <b>о</b>

Не забывайте, что приведенная схема произношения является приблизительной. Произношение в английском языке часто не подчиняется правилам, поэтому не удивляйтесь, если в записях Вам встретятся слова, читающиеся не так, как указано выше.

# Lesson **one**

## NICE TO MEET YOU!

### Recording



- Miss López, this is Mr. Duval.
- Nice to meet you, Mr. Duval.



This is Mr. Duval.

Is this Mr. Duval?  
– Yes, it is.

It's Mr. Duval.



This is Miss López.

Is this Mr. Duval?  
– No, it's not.

It's not Mr. Duval.



This is Mrs. Morgan.

Is this Miss López?  
– No, it's not.

Is it Mr. Duval or  
Mrs. Morgan?  
– It's Mrs. Morgan.

Обратите внимание, что текст, начиная с первой страницы, полностью записан на кассете.

### NICE TO MEET YOU!

*Очень приятно (познакомиться с Вами)!  
Заучите это устойчивое выражение целиком, не пытайтесь перевести каждое слово в отдельности.*

- Miss López, this is Mr. Duval.
- Nice to meet you, Mr. Duval.
- Мисс Лопес, это мистер Дюваль.
- Очень приятно, мистер Дюваль.

В английском языке в подобных предложениях всегда употребляется глагол-связка **is** (есть), который в русском языке обычно опускается.

**This is Mr. Duval.**

**This is Miss Lopez.**

**This is Mrs. Morgan.**

*Это (есть) мистер Дюваль.*

*Это (есть) мисс Лопес.*

*Это (есть) миссис Морган.*

**Mr.** (сокращённая форма от **Mister**), **Mrs.** (сокращённая форма от **Missis**) переводятся как *господин (г-н), госпожа (г-жа)*; **Miss** – *госпожа* при обращении к девушке или незамужней женщине.

**Is this Mr. Duval?**

– Yes, it is.

**It's Mr. Duval.**

*Это мистер Дюваль?*

– Да, (это он).

*Это мистер Дюваль.*

**Yes, it is.**

Неполный (краткий) ответ: в английской разговорной речи очень часто употребляется именно такая форма ответа на вопрос, когда по-русски можно ответить просто *да* или *нет*.

**Is this Mr. Duval?**

– No, it's not.

*Это мистер Дюваль?*

– Нет.

**No, it's not.**

**It's not Mr. Duval.**

*Нет, (это не он).*

*Это не мистер Дюваль.*

Обратите внимание на отрицательную форму краткого ответа: **No, it's not.** В английской разговорной речи **it is** часто заменяется сокращённой формой **it's**, за исключением конца фразы: **No, it's not, no: Yes, it is.**

or — или

### WHO'S THIS?

*Кто это?*

**Who's** — сокращённая форма от **who is**.

#### Is this Mr. Morgan?

Обратите внимание на инверсию (перестановку) сказуемого и подлежащего при образовании вопросительной формы предложения:

утвердительное предложение "**This is Mr. Morgan**" превращается в вопросительное "**Is this Mr. Morgan?**"

#### Is it Mr. Tanaka?

**It** употребляется, как правило, в тех случаях, когда о чём-то или о ком-то говорят впервые. В дальнейшем употребляется местоимение **it**:

Is this Mr. Morgan? —

*Это мистер Морган?*

Is it Mr. Tanaka? —

*Это мистер Танака?*

Who is it? — *Кто это?*

#### Action Questions — Устные вопросы

Эти вопросы ("**Action Questions**") предназначены для развития понимания и навыков устной речи. Отвечайте вслух на вопросы, записанные на кассете. Вы услышите вопрос, за которым последует пауза для Вашего ответа. Постарайтесь успеть ответить в отведённое время. После паузы последует правильный ответ, а за ним — ещё одна пауза. Повторите правильный ответ, даже если Вы не допустили ошибки в первый раз.

**Listen!** — *Слушайте!*

**Answer!** — *Отвечайте!*

## WHO'S THIS?

### Recording



This is Miss Santos.

Is this Mr. Morgan?

— *No, it's not.*

Is it Mr. Tanaka?

— *No, it's not.*

Who is it?

— *It's Miss Santos.*



This is Mrs. Schulz.



This is Mr. Tanaka.

Is this Miss Santos?

— *No, it's not.*

Is it Mr. Duval?

— *No, it's not.*

Who is it?

— *It's Mr. Tanaka.*



Who's this?

— *It's Mr. Duval.*

### Action Questions

**Listen!**

**Answer!**

This is Mr. Morgan.

Is this Mr. Duval? (*No,...*)

Is it Mr. Morgan? (*Yes,...*)

**Listen!**

**Answer!**

This is Mrs. Morgan.

Is this Mrs. Schulz? (*No,...*)

Is it Miss Santos?

Who is it?

**Listen!**

Is this Mrs. Morgan or Mr. Morgan?



## Exercise

1. Is this Miss López?

*Yes, it is.*

---



2. Is this Mr. Morgan?

---

3. Is it Mr. Morgan or Mr. Tanaka?

---

4. *Is this Miss Santos?*

---



5. Who is it?

---

6. Who's this?

---



7. Is this Miss López?

---

8. Is it Miss Santos?

---

9. Who is it?

---

10. Who's this?

---



**Exercise -- упражнение**  
Выполните это упражнение, чтобы проверить, насколько хорошо Вы усвоили материал. Отвечайте на вопросы письменно, используя те фразы, которые встречались в предыдущем тексте. Проверьте правильность ответов в разделе **Key to written exercises and action question** — *Ответы на письменные упражнения и устные вопросы* в конце книги.

**WHAT'S THIS?**  
*Что это (такое)?*

**What's** – сокращённая форма от **what is**.

Вопрос с местоимением **what** образуется так же, как и с местоимением **who**, однако относится не к людям, а к неодушевлённым предметам или животным.

**This is a map.**  
*Это географическая карта.*

**a picture** – картинка, фотография  
**a cassette** – кассета

Обратите внимание на неопределённый артикль **a**, который употребляется перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном числе в тех случаях, когда в русском языке можно поставить слова: "один, какой-то, любой".

**too** – тоже  
**Too** обычно ставится в конец предложения, после запятой.

**It's a cassette.**  
*Это кассета.*

**Is this a map?**  
*Это карта?*

**Is it a picture?**  
*Это картинка?*

Обратите внимание, что в большинстве ответов употребляется местоимение **it**, которое заменяет **this**, использующееся в вопросах.

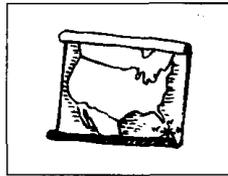
**What is it?**  
*Что это такое?*

**a telephone** – телефон  
**a typewriter** – пишущая машинка  
**and** – и  
**a dog** – собака

**Very good!** – *Очень хорошо!*

**WHAT'S THIS?**

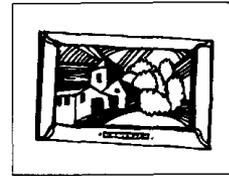
**Recording**



This is a map.

Is this a map?

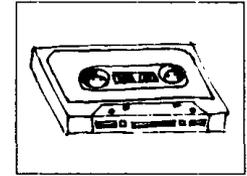
— Yes, it is.



This is a picture.

Is this a map, too?

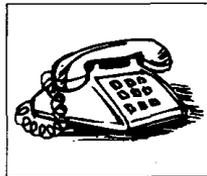
— No, it's not.



This is a cassette.

Is this a picture or a cassette?

— It's a cassette.



Is this a map?  
— No, it's not.

Is it a picture?  
— No, it's not.

What is it?  
— It's a telephone.



Is this a cassette?  
— No, it's not.

Is it a map?  
— No, it's not.

What is it?  
— It's a typewriter.



And what's this?  
— It's a dog.

**Question Questions**

**Listen!**

Is this a typewriter? (Yes,...)

Is this a typewriter?

Is it a dog?

What is it?

And what's this?

**Very good!**

## HE AND SHE

### Recording



This is Mr. Morgan.

**Mr. Morgan** is American.

**He's** American.

Is Mr. Morgan American?

— *Yes, he is.*

Is Mr. Duval American, too?

— *No, he's not.*

Is he German?

— *No, he's not.*

What nationality is Mr. Duval?

— *He's French.*

Is Mr. Tanaka Brazilian or Japanese?

— *He's Japanese.*

### Action Questions

**Listen!**

**Answer!**

This is Mr. Morgan.

Is Mr. Morgan American?

Is Mr. Tanaka American, too?

Is he American or Japanese?

Is Mrs. Morgan Japanese, too?

What nationality is she?

And what about Mr. Duval?



This is Mrs. Morgan.

**Mrs. Morgan** is American, too.

**She's** American.

Is Mrs. Morgan American?

— *Yes, she is.*

Is Mrs. Duval American, too?

— *No, she's not.*

Is she German?

— *No, she's not.*

What nationality is Mrs. Duval?

— *She's French.*

And what about Miss López?

— *She's Venezuelan.*

## HE AND SHE

*Он и она*

**Mr. Morgan is American.**

*Мистер Морган — американец.*

**He's American.**

*Он американец.*

**She's American.**

*Она американка.*

Слово **American** является прилагательным, хотя и переводится на русский язык с помощью существительного.

Заметьте:

- 1) английские прилагательные не изменяются в роде и числе;
- 2) прилагательные, обозначающие национальность, всегда пишутся с заглавной буквы.

### he and she

Нам уже встречалось личное местоимение **it**; запомните два других личных местоимения, которые могут выступать в предложении в роли подлежащего: **he** (*он*) и **she** (*она*). Эти два местоимения заменяют имена и фамилии людей:

**Mr. Morgan** is American =

**He** is American.

**Mrs. Duval** is French =

**She** is French.

**French** — *француз, француженка*

Внимание! Как уже отмечалось выше, местоимение **this**, используемое в вопросе, заменяется в ответе на **it**:

**Is this Mr. Morgan?**

— *Yes, it is.*

**He is** и **she is** в разговорном языке часто заменяются сокращёнными формами **he's** и **she's**.

**Yes, she is.**

Вы уже знаете форму краткого ответа **Yes, it is**. Подобный ответ возможен и с местоимениями **he** и **she**: **Yes, she is.**

**What nationality is Mr. Duval?**

*Кто по национальности мистер Дюваль?*

**German** — *немец, немка*

**Russian** — *русский, русская*

**Brazilian** — *бразилец, бразильянка*

**Japanese** — *японец, японка*

**Venezuelan** — *венесуэлец, венесуэлка*

What city is Mr. Tanaka from?  
Из какого города мистер Танака?

В английском языке предлог может ставиться в конец предложения (Вм это увидите во многих примерах).

## MR. MORGAN IS FROM NEW YORK

### Recording

Is Mr. Morgan from Chicago?  
*No, he's not.*

Is he from Washington or  
New York?  
*— He's from New York.*

And what about Mrs. Morgan?  
What nationality is she?  
*— She's American, too.*

Where's she from?  
*— She's from New York,  
too.*

What city is Mr. Tanaka  
from?  
*— He's from Tokyo.*



Mr. Morgan is American.  
He's from New York.

### Action Questions

**Listen!**  
**Answer!**

It's Mrs. Morgan.  
Is Mrs. Morgan American?  
Is she from Washington?  
Where's she from?  
Is Mr. Tanaka from New York, too?  
What city is he from?

### Exercise

1. Is Mrs. Schulz from Rome?

---

2. Is she from Paris or Berlin?

---

3. What city is Mr. Morgan from?

---

4. Who's from Paris, Mr. Tanaka or Mr. Duval?

---

5. Is Mr. Tanaka from New York or Tokyo?

---



## Exercise

Write questions with: **Who? What? What city? What country?  
What nationality?**

*Example:* It's **Mr. Duval**.

**Who is it?**

---

1. He's **French**.

---

2. He's from **Paris**.

---

3. Paris is a **city**.

---

4. Berlin is in **Germany**.

---

5. **Mr. Morgan** is from New York.

---

6. He's **American**.

---

7. Caracas is in **Venezuela**.

---

8. Venezuela is a **country**.

---

9. Miss López is from **Caracas**.

---

10. She's **Venezuelan**.

---

## Exercise

**Write questions with: ...**

*Задайте вопросы с помощью следующих выражений:*

**Who? What? What city? What country?  
What nationality?**

*example – пример*

В английском языке перед названиями стран артикль, как правило, не ставится (исключения: **the United States**, **the Soviet Union** и некоторые другие слова).

Задайте соответствующие вопросы к данным предложениям при помощи приведённых выше выражений. Это упражнение позволит Вам убедиться, что Вы уже сможете получить ответы на интересующие Вас вопросы на английском языке.

### Exercise

Ответьте на вопросы письменно. Это упражнение направлено на повторение использования названий стран, городов и фамилий людей. Примените уже известные Вам основные формы предложений.



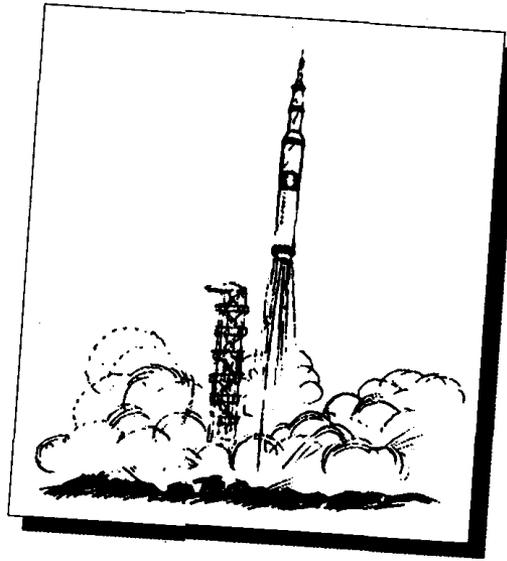
Tower Bridge  
London, England

1. Is this London?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Is London a city in the United States?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What is it?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Who's from London?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What city is Miss Santos from?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Is Rio de Janeiro a Brazilian city?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Is New York a Brazilian city, too?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. What is it?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Is Mr. Morgan from New York?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. What city is Mrs. Morgan from?  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. And what about Miss López?  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. Where's Caracas?  
\_\_\_\_\_

Выражение **What about...?** показывает, что задаваемый вопрос имеет тот же смысл, что и предыдущие вопросительное и утвердительное предложения. По-русски в данном случае достаточно употребить выражение: "А (как насчёт) ...?". В дальнейшем мы будем часто встречаться с конструкцией **What about...?**

# NUMBERS

- 10 Ten...
- 9 Nine...
- 8 Eight...
- 7 Seven...
- 6 Six...
- 5 Five...
- 4 Four...
- 3 Three...
- 2 Two...
- 1 One...
- 0 Zero!



## Exercise

Write out the numbers.

6

4

10

5

0

2

7

1

9

8

3

# NUMBERS

*Имена числительные*

## Exercise

Write out the numbers.

*Напишите числительные словами.*

Это упражнение поможет Вам выучить числительные и научиться их записывать словами.

# Vocabulary **one**

---

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 1.

<b>a/an</b>	<i>неопределённый артикль</i>	<b>Japanese</b>	японец, японка
<b>about</b>	<i>см. What about...?</i>	<b>Listen!</b>	Слушайте!
<b>American</b>	американец, американка	<b>a map</b>	географическая карта
<b>and</b>	и	<b>meet</b>	<i>см. Nice to meet you!</i>
<b>Answer!</b>	<i>Отвечайте!</i>	<b>Miss</b>	мисс, госпожа
<b>Brazilian</b>	бразилец, бразильянка	<b>Mr.</b>	мистер, господин
<b>a cassette</b>	кассета	<b>Mrs.</b>	миссис, госпожа
<b>a city</b>	город	<b>nationality</b>	национальность
<b>a country</b>	страна	<b>Nice to meet you.</b>	Очень приятно (познакомиться с Вами)!
<b>a dog</b>	собака	<b>nine</b>	девять
<b>eight</b>	восемь	<b>no</b>	нет
<b>England</b>	Англия	<b>not</b>	не
<b>an exercise</b>	упражнение	<b>numbers</b>	числительные
<b>five</b>	пять	<b>one</b>	один, одна
<b>four</b>	четыре	<b>or</b>	или
<b>France</b>	Франция	<b>a picture</b>	картинка, фотография
<b>French</b>	француз, француженка	<b>seven</b>	семь
<b>from</b>	из ( <i>происхождение</i> )	<b>she('s)</b>	она (есть)
<b>Mr. Morgan is</b>	Мистер Морган	<b>six</b>	шесть
<b>from New York.</b>	из Нью-Йорка.	<b>a telephone</b>	телефон
<b>German</b>	немец, немка	<b>ten</b>	десять
<b>Germany</b>	Германия	<b>this</b>	этот, эта, это
<b>he('s)</b>	он (есть)	<b>this is</b>	вот (это)
<b>in</b>	в	<b>three</b>	три
<b>Moscow is</b>	Москва находится	<b>to</b>	<i>см. Nice to meet you!</i>
<b>in Russia.</b>	в России.	<b>too</b>	тоже, также
<b>is</b>	есть, находится	<b>two</b>	два
<b>it('s)</b>	это (есть)		

<b>a typewriter</b>	пишущая машинка	<b>What nationality...?</b>	Кто по национальности...?
<b>(the) United States</b>	Соединённые Штаты	<b>What country/city...?</b>	Из какой страны/города...?
<b>Venezuela</b>	Венесуэла	<b>What's this?</b>	Что это?
<b>Venezuelan</b>	венесуэлец, венесуэлка	<b>where('s)</b>	Где...?
<b>Very good!</b>	Очень хорошо!	<b>who('s)</b>	Кто...?
<b>what</b>	что	<b>yes</b>	да
<b>What is it?</b>	Что это (такое)?	<b>you</b>	см. <b>Nice to meet you!</b>
<b>What about...?</b>	А (как насчёт)...?	<b>zero</b>	ноль

### Английский алфавит

<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>F</b>	<b>G</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>J</b>	<b>K</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>M</b>
a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m
<b>N</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>P</b>	<b>Q</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>S</b>	<b>T</b>	<b>U</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>W</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>Y</b>	<b>Z</b>
n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z

# Lesson TWO

## THE PLANE IS IN NEW YORK

*Самолёт (находится) в Нью-Йорке*

Предлог **in** соответствует русскому предлогу *в*.

До сих пор нам встречался только неопределённый артикль **a**. В этом уроке мы впервые приступаем к изучению определённого артикля **the**.

Этот артикль употребляется как перед исчисляемыми существительными в единственном и множественном числе, так и перед неисчисляемыми существительными. Существительные с определённым артиклем всегда указывают на конкретный, уже упоминавшийся предмет или вещество.

**plane** – *самолёт*

**Plane** – сокращение от слова **airplane**.

Обратите внимание, что, начиная с этого урока, мы не будем употреблять неопределённый артикль перед вводимым новым словом.

**bus** – *автобус*

**The plane is.**

Обратите внимание на то, как строится ещё одна форма краткого ответа: глагол ставится в конец предложения, а подразумеваемое обстоятельство опускается.

**car** – *автомобиль*

## THE PLANE IS IN NEW YORK

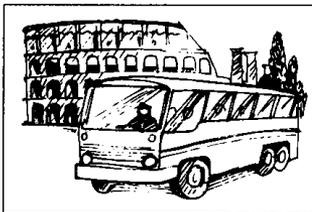


### Recording



This is **a** plane.

**The** plane is in New York.



Is this a plane, too? No, it's not. What is it? It's a bus.  
Is the bus in New York? No, it's not. Where is the bus?  
It's in Rome. And what's in New York? The plane is.

Is this a plane, too? No, it's not. It's a car.

Is the car in Rome? No, it's not. Is it in Rome or in Tokyo? It's in Tokyo. And what's in Rome? The bus is.



### Action Questions

**Listen!**

Is this a plane?

Is the plane in New York?

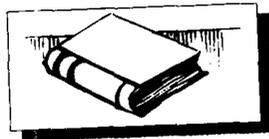
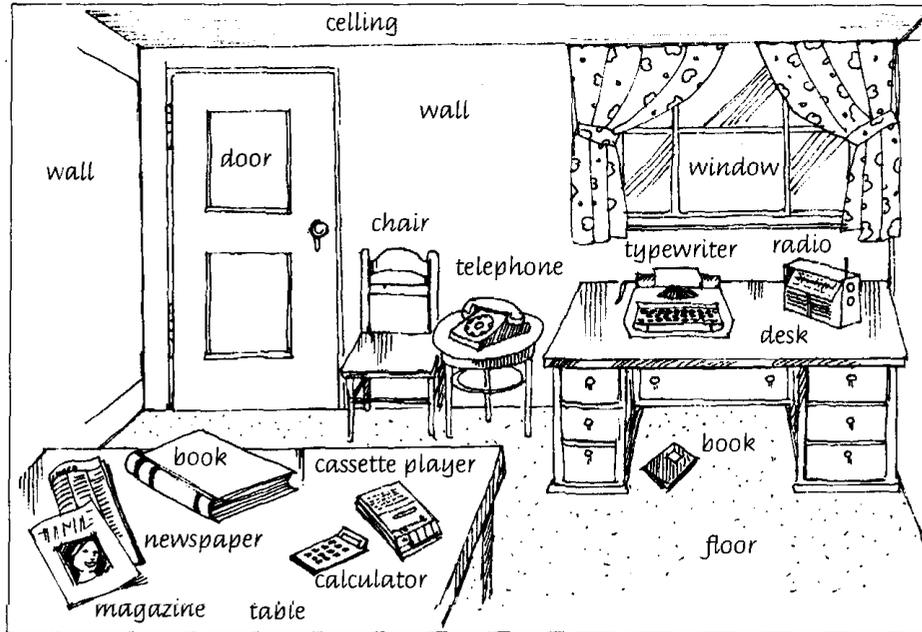
Is the bus in New York, too?

Is the bus in New York or in Rome?

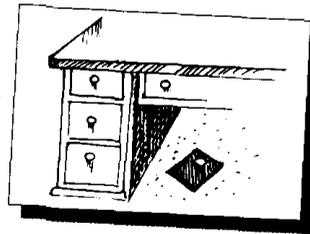
What's in New York?

And what's in Tokyo?

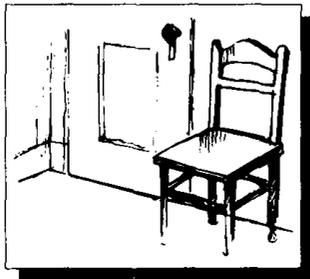
## WHAT'S IN THIS PICTURE?



The big book is on the table.



The small book is under the desk.



The chair is next to the door.

## WHAT'S IN THIS PICTURE?

Что изображено на этой картинке?

Приводим слова, обозначающие различные предметы, которые могут находиться в офисе или дома. Выучите эту простую, общепотребительную лексику.

**book** – книга  
**calculator** – калькулятор  
**cassette player** – (кассетный) магнитофон  
**chair** – стул  
**desk** – письменный стол  
**door** – дверь  
**floor** – пол  
**magazine** – журнал  
**newspaper** – газета  
**radio** – радио  
**table** – стол  
**wall** – стена  
**window** – окно

The big book is on the table.

Большая книга (находится) на столе.

Напоминаем ещё раз, что английские прилагательные (**big, small**) не изменяются, т.е. не согласуются с существительными ни в роде, ни в числе.

under the desk

под письменным столом

next to the door

возле двери

# WHERE'S THE SMALL BOOK?

## Recording

The magazine is on the table. Is the newspaper on the table, too? Yes, it is. And what about the calculator? It's on the table, too. Is the typewriter on the table? No, it's not. It's on the desk. What about the radio? Is the radio under the desk? No, it's not. It's on it. And where's the chair? It's over there, next to the door. And what about the telephone? It's on the small table. Is the small table next to the desk? Yes, it is. It's next to the desk. It's between the desk and the chair.

### **It's on it.**

*Здесь: Оно (радио) находится на нём (на столе).*

Местоимение **it** может быть как подлежащим: "**It's a table**", так и дополнением (косвенным), перед которым ставится предлог: "**The chair is next to it**".

**between** — между

## Question Questions

### **Listen!**

Is that a telephone?

What is it?

Is the typewriter under the desk?

Is it under the desk or on it?

And what about the small book?

Is the telephone on the big table or the small table?

And what about the magazine?

## Exercise

1. Where's the typewriter?

---

2. What's next to the door?

---

3. Is the newspaper on the table or on the desk?

---

4. And what about the radio?

---

# NUMBERS

11 eleven 12 twelve 13 thirteen 14 fourteen

15 fifteen 16 sixteen 17 seventeen

18 eighteen 19 nineteen

20 twenty



## Exercise

Write out the numbers.

14 \_\_\_\_\_

11 \_\_\_\_\_

16 \_\_\_\_\_

12 \_\_\_\_\_

20 \_\_\_\_\_

19 \_\_\_\_\_

17 \_\_\_\_\_

13 \_\_\_\_\_

18 \_\_\_\_\_

15 \_\_\_\_\_

## Exercise

Продолжаем учить числительные  
(от 11 до 20).

## WHAT'S THAT OVER THERE?

*Что это там такое?*

Выражения, приведённые в этом диалоге, помогут Вам попросить и получить нужные Вам вещи.

### Excuse me, Bill!

*Простите, Билл!*

Билл — уменьшительная форма от имени Уильям (**William**). Следует отметить, что в США гораздо чаще обращаются к человеку просто по имени, чем это принято в России. Нередко при первом же знакомстве по имени называют даже людей более старшего возраста или занимающих более высокое положение. В данном случае это не означает ни излишней фамильярности, ни дружеского отношения; вообще же, выбирая то или иное обращение, следует прежде всего руководствоваться здравым смыслом.

### this and that

**This** обозначает предмет, расположенный вблизи говорящего, а **that** — более отдалённый.

### Oh, that! — Ах, этом!

Прилагательные в английском языке (а также другие части речи, выполняющие в предложении функцию определения) ставятся перед определяемым существительным, например: **It's Berlitz Cassette Number One.**

*Это кассета (курса) Берлиц, номер один.*

Отметьте, что слово **number** может означать и *числительное*, и *номер*.

### Give me the cassette, please.

*Дайте мне кассету, пожалуйста.*

**Here it is.**

*Вот, (пожалуйста).*

**Thank you.**

*Спасибо.*

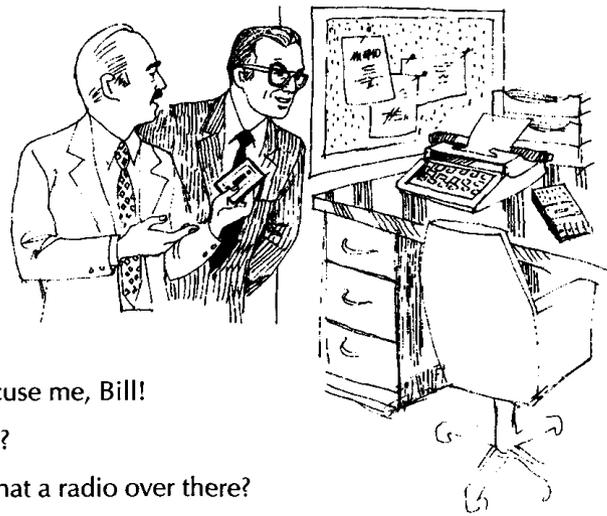
**You're welcome.**

*Не за что.*

Запомните несколько приведенных формул вежливости.

## WHAT'S THAT OVER THERE?

### Recording



- Mr. Morgan:** Excuse me, Bill!
- Mr. Turner:** Yes?
- Mr. Morgan:** Is that a radio over there?
- Mr. Turner:** Where?
- Mr. Morgan:** Over there on the desk, next to the typewriter. Is that a radio or is it a calculator?
- Mr. Turner:** Oh, that! No, that's not a radio, and it's not a calculator. It's a cassette player.
- Mr. Morgan:** A cassette player?
- Mr. Turner:** Yes, a small Japanese one. That's a cassette player and this is a cassette. A Berlitz cassette. It's Berlitz Cassette Number One.
- Mr. Morgan:** Give me the cassette, please.
- Mr. Turner:** Here it is.
- Mr. Morgan:** Thank you.
- Mr. Turner:** You're welcome.

# Vocabulary **two**

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 2.

<b>at</b>	в	<b>magazine</b>	журнал
<b>at the airport</b>	в аэропорту	<b>me</b>	см. <b>Excuse me! Give me the...!</b>
<b>between</b>	между	<b>newspaper</b>	газета
<b>big</b>	<i>большой</i>	<b>next to</b>	возле, рядом
<b>book</b>	книга	<b>nineteen</b>	девятнадцать
<b>bus</b>	автобус	<b>number one</b>	номер один
<b>calculator</b>	калькулятор	<b>on</b>	на
<b>car</b>	автомобиль, машина	<b>on the table</b>	на столе
<b>cassette player</b>	(кассетный) магнитофон	<b>over there</b>	там
<b>chair</b>	стул	<b>plane</b>	самолёт
<b>desk</b>	письменный стол	<b>player</b>	см. <b>cassette player</b>
<b>door</b>	дверь	<b>please</b>	пожалуйста
<b>eighteen</b>	восемнадцать	<b>Give me the..., please!</b>	дайте мне..., пожалуйста!
<b>eleven</b>	одиннадцать	<b>radio</b>	радио
<b>Excuse me!</b>	Извините!/Простите!	<b>seventeen</b>	семнадцать
<b>fifteen</b>	пятнадцать	<b>sixteen</b>	шестнадцать
<b>floor</b>	пол	<b>small</b>	маленький
<b>fourteen</b>	четырнадцать	<b>table</b>	стол
<b>give</b>	давать	<b>Thank you!</b>	Спасибо!
<b>Give me the... please!</b>	Дайте мне..., пожалуйста!	<b>that is</b>	тот, та, то (есть)
<b>here</b>	здесь	<b>that's</b>	<i>сокращённая форма от that is</i>
<b>Here it is.</b>	Вот.	<b>that car</b>	та машина
<b>in</b>	в	<b>that one</b>	тот, та, то
<b>in New York</b>	в Нью-Йорке	<b>the</b>	<i>определённый артикль</i>
<b>in this picture</b>	на этой картинке	<b>there</b>	там
<b>kind</b>	вид, род, сорт	<b>over there</b>	(вон) там
		<b>thirteen</b>	тринадцать

<b>this</b>	ЭТОТ, ЭТА, ЭТО
<b>this one</b>	ЭТОТ, ЭТА, ЭТО
<b>this car</b>	ЭТА МАШИНА
<b>to</b>	<i>см. next to</i>
<b>twelve</b>	двенадцать
<b>twenty</b>	двадцать
<b>under</b>	ПОД
<b>under the chair</b>	ПОД ПИСЬМЕННЫМ СТОЛОМ

<b>very</b>	настоящий
<b>wall</b>	стена
<b>welcome</b>	<i>см. You're welcome.</i>
<b>window</b>	окно
<b>you</b>	<i>см. Thank you!</i>
<b>You're welcome.</b>	Пожалуйста./Не стоит благодарности.

### Английский алфавит

<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>F</b>	<b>G</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>J</b>	<b>K</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>M</b>
a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m
<b>N</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>P</b>	<b>Q</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>S</b>	<b>T</b>	<b>U</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>W</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>Y</b>	<b>Z</b>
n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z

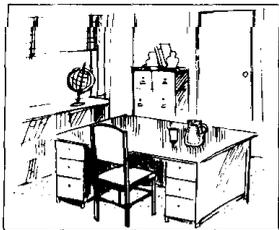
# Lesson **three**

## WHOSE CHAIR IS THIS?

### Recording



This is a desk.  
It's Mr. Morgan's desk.  
And that's Mr. Morgan's chair.



Is this Mr. Duval's desk?  
– No, it's not.

Is it Miss Brown's desk?  
– No, it's not.

Whose desk is it?  
– It's Mr. Morgan's desk.



This is a chair.  
It's Mrs. Morgan's chair.  
And that's Mrs. Morgan's radio.

And whose radio is that?  
– It's Mrs. Morgan's radio.

**Mr. Morgan's** desk is big.

**His** desk is big.  
**His** chair is big, too.



Hello! I'm Mr. Johnson. I'm your teacher.  
Are you my student? Yes, you are. Am I sitting  
in your car? No, I'm not. I'm sitting in my car,  
right? That's right, I'm sitting in my car.

**Mrs. Morgan's** chair is black.

**Her** chair is black.  
**Her** radio is black, too.

## WHOSE CHAIR IS THIS?

*Чей это стул?*

**It's Mr. Morgan's desk.**

*Это письменный стол мистера Моргана.*

Принадлежность какого-либо предмета тому или иному лицу обозначается в английском языке при помощи апострофа и буквы **s**, которые ставятся после имени того, кому принадлежит предмет, и перед названием предмета: **Mr. Morgan's desk** = письменный стол мистера Моргана. Отметьте, что в такой конструкции артикль не употребляется.

**his** desk – его письменный стол

**her** – её

**your** – твой, твоя, твоё (ваш/Ваш, ваша/Ваша, ваше/Ваше)

**my** – мой, моя, моё

Притяжательные местоимения **his** или **her** употребляются в зависимости от рода того, кому принадлежит предмет. Так мы говорим **his desk**, если речь идёт о письменном столе мистера Моргана, и **her desk** – если письменный стол принадлежит миссис (госпоже) Морган.

Формы **standing** и **sitting** в английском языке являются причастиями, а в русском языке в аналогичных конструкциях употребляется глагол в личной форме: She is **sitting** = Она сидит.

**black** – чёрный

..., **right?** – ..., правда?

**That's right.** – Правда (Да, это так). Слово **right** может стоять в конце утвердительного предложения, преобразуя его в вопросительное (по-русски в таких случаях часто добавляют *не правда ли?*). Ответ, выражающий согласие, звучит так: **that's right.**

Приводим таблицу личных  
и соответствующих им  
притяжательных местоимений.

I	→	my
you		your
he		his
she		her

## Question

**Listen!**

*I'm sitting in my car.*

**Answer!**

Am I sitting in your car?

Whose car am I sitting in?

Is Mr. Morgan's telephone on my desk?

Is it on my desk or his desk?

Is Mrs. Morgan sitting in my chair?

Whose chair is she sitting in?

### Exercise

Отвечьте на вопросы, сверяясь с текстом  
на стр. 19.



### Exercise

1. Am I sitting in Mr. Morgan's car?

---

2. Whose car am I sitting in?

---

3. Is Mr. Morgan standing next to your chair?

---

4. Whose chair is he standing next to?

---



## Exercise

*Examples:* Mr. Johnson is sitting next to a student.

*It's his student.*

---

I'm standing next to a typewriter.

*It's my typewriter.*

---

1. You're standing next to a picture.

---

2. Mrs. Morgan is standing next to a chair.

---

3. Mary is standing next to a car.

---

4. You're sitting next to a teacher.

---

5. Mr. Morgan is sitting next to a desk.

---

6. I'm sitting next to a television.

---

7. Peter is standing next to a bicycle.

---

8. The girl is standing next to a dog.

---

### Exercise

Преобразуйте данные предложения, употребляя притяжательные местоимения (см. пример).

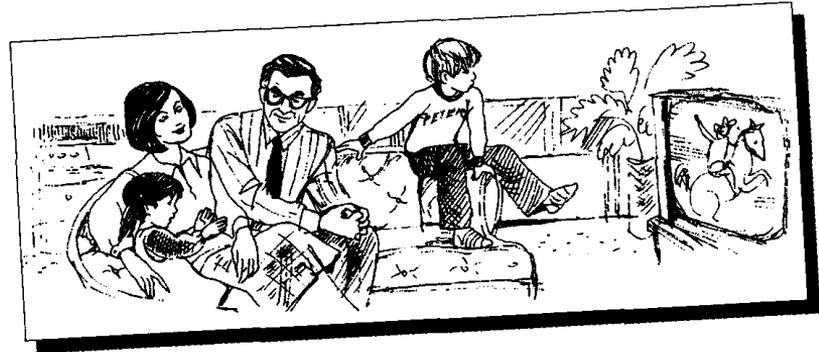
Это упражнение поможет Вам научиться правильно употреблять притяжательные местоимения; обратите на них особое внимание.

**television** – телевизор

**bicycle** – велосипед

## THE MORGAN FAMILY

### Recording



wife — жена  
husband — муж

son — сын  
daughter — дочь

father — отец  
mother — мать

brother — брат  
sister — сестра

man — человек, мужчина  
boy — мальчик

Is Susan Morgan Mr. Morgan's teacher? No, she's not. She's his wife. She's his wife, and he's her husband, right? That's right, she's his wife, and he's her husband.

And what about Mary? Is Mary Mr. Morgan's son? No, she's not. She's his daughter. Mary is his daughter, and Peter is his son.

Mr. Morgan is Peter's father. And what about Mrs. Morgan? She's his mother. Mrs. Morgan is Peter's mother, and Mr. Morgan is his father.

Is Peter Mary Morgan's husband? No, he's not. Is he her father? No, he's not. He's her brother. Peter is Mary's brother, and Mary is Peter's sister.

This is the Morgan family.

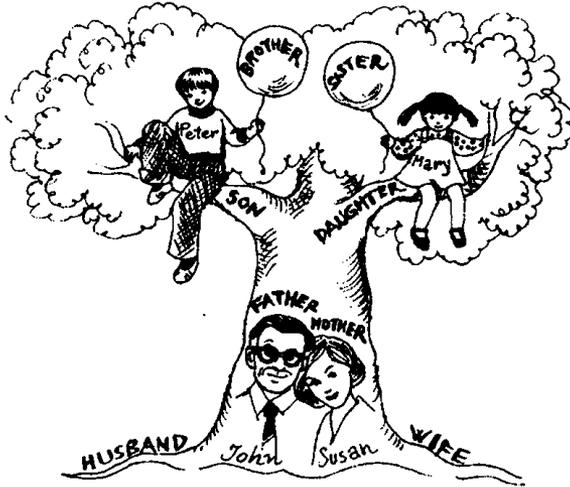
### Action Questions

**Answer!**

Is Peter a man or a boy?  
Is he Mr. Morgan's daughter?  
Is he Mr. Morgan's daughter or his son?  
And what about Mary?  
Is Mrs. Morgan Mary's father or her mother?  
Is she Mr. Morgan's wife?  
And who's Mrs. Morgan's husband?



# Exercise



## Exercise

Дополните предложения согласно тексту на стр. 22, а затем замените имена людей местоимениями, как показано в примере (замените подлежащее личным местоимением, а также используйте притяжательное местоимение).

Example: Susan is Mary's mother .  
She's her mother.

1. Mrs. Morgan is Mr. Morgan's \_\_\_\_\_ .

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Peter is Susan Morgan's \_\_\_\_\_ .

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Mr. Morgan is Mary's \_\_\_\_\_ .

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Mary is Peter Morgan's \_\_\_\_\_ .

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Mr. Morgan is Susan Morgan's \_\_\_\_\_ .

\_\_\_\_\_

**office** — офис, рабочий кабинет  
Слово *офис* было заимствовано в одном из своих значений из английского языка недавно.

## MR. MORGAN'S OFFICE

### Recording



**woman** — женщина  
**secretary** — секретарь, секретарша

This is a picture of an office. It's Mr. Morgan's office. And the woman is Mr. Morgan's secretary. Her name is Janet Brown.

Is Mr. Morgan standing? Yes, he is. Is he standing next to Miss Brown's desk? No, he's not. He's standing in front of it. Miss Brown's desk is between Mr. Morgan and Janet.

**in front of** — перед

Is the door in front of Mr. Morgan, too? No, it's not. It's behind him. It's behind him and in front of Janet.

**behind** — за (сзади)

And what about the window? Is it in front of Janet? No, it's not. Where is it? It's behind her.

В таблице приведены личные местоимения-подлежащие и соответствующие им личные местоимения-дополнения. Отметьте, что формы местоимений **you** и **it** не изменяются, какую бы функцию в предложении они ни выполняли.

**I**'m standing in front of you.

You're standing behind **me.**

I	me
you	you
he	him
she	her
it	it



# Question

## Action Questions

- Answer!**
- Is Miss Brown a secretary?
  - Is she my secretary?
  - Whose secretary is she?
  - Is Janet standing?
  - Who's standing?
  - Is he standing behind Janet?
  - Where's he standing?



## Exercise

1. Is Mr. Morgan standing next to Miss Brown's desk?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Where's he standing?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What's behind him?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Is Miss Brown's typewriter behind her or in front of her?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Where's the window?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Exercise

Ответьте на вопросы, употребляя нужный по смыслу предлог и личные местоимения (в функции подлежащего и дополнения).

### Exercise A

Составьте из двух предложений одно с помощью притяжательной конструкции 's (см. пример). Надеемся, что Вы уже усвоили эту конструкцию.

England – Англия

red – красный

### Exercise B

Дополните предложения, произведя необходимую перестановку и употребляя нужные местоимения (см. пример).

Это упражнение направлено на усвоение местоимений, употребляющихся в функции подлежащего и дополнения.



## Exercise A

Example: This is Peter. His last name is "Morgan."

Peter's last name is "Morgan."

1. This is Linda. Her mother is from England.

2. This is my son. His car is from Germany.

3. That's Joan's husband. His office is very big.

4. That's my secretary. Her name is Janet Brown.

5. That's Bill's daughter. Her bicycle is red.



## Exercise B

Example: I'm sitting next to my wife, and

she's sitting next to me.

1. I'm standing next to Mr. Duval, and

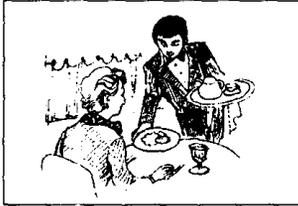
2. Peter is sitting next to Mary, and

3. You're standing next to my son, and

4. Miss Brown is standing next to Mr. Morgan, and

## TONY IS A WAITER

### Recording



This is Tony Mellini. Tony is a waiter. He's in a restaurant. He's standing next to a table. Is the woman standing, too? No, she's not. She's sitting. She's sitting at the table. Is she a waiter, too? No, she's not. She's a customer.



Mike O'Connor isn't a waiter. What is he? He's a policeman. Mike is standing, too, but he isn't standing in a restaurant. Is he standing in the street? No, he's not. He's standing on the sidewalk. He's standing next to a car. He's standing next to a police car, right? That's right, he's standing next to a police car.



Bob Stern is a salesclerk. Where is he? He's in a store. Is he standing, too? Yes, he is. He's standing behind the counter. Who's the woman in front of Bob? It's Mrs. Morgan. She's a customer in the store.

## Action Questions

### Answer!

Is Tony Mellini a waiter?  
Is Mike O'Connor a waiter, too?  
Is he a waiter or a policeman?  
Is he in the street or on the sidewalk?  
Is Bob Stern on the sidewalk, too?  
Where is he?  
Is Bob a policeman?  
What is he?

## TONY IS A WAITER

Тони — официант

**restaurant** — ресторан

**policeman** — полицейский

**street** — улица

**sidewalk** — тротуар

**police car** — полицейская машина

Заметьте, что в словосочетании **a police car** существительное **police** употребляется как определение и поэтому стоит перед определяемым существительным:  
**a police car** = полицейская машина (машина полиции)

Такая конструкция широко применяется в английском языке: Вы увидите это на многочисленных примерах.

**customer** — покупатель

**salesclerk** — продавец

**store** — магазин

**counter** — прилавок

### Exercise A

Отвечьте на вопросы в краткой форме, основываясь на сведениях, полученных из текста на стр. 27.



## Exercise A

1. Is Tony Mellini a policeman?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. What is he?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Is he standing in a store or in a restaurant?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Is Mrs. Morgan standing in the street?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Where is she?

\_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise B

Дополните предложения, заменяя выделенное слово соответствующим антонимом (словом с противоположным значением); см. пример.

*girl* — девочка, девушка



## Exercise B

Example: Tony's not **sitting**; he's standing.

1. He isn't standing **behind** the table; he's standing \_\_\_\_\_ it.

2. The table isn't **big**; it's \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Peter isn't a **girl**; he's a \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Bob Stern isn't **in front of** the counter; he's \_\_\_\_\_ it.

5. Mike O'Connor isn't **sitting in** the car; he's standing \_\_\_\_\_ it.



## Exercise

Mr. Morgan isn't standing **in front of** Susan.

**Who** is he standing **in front of?**

— *He's standing in front of Janet.*

This isn't a picture **of** a plane.

**What** is this a picture **of?**

— *It's a picture of a car.*

*Example:* Miss Brown isn't sitting behind Mr. Morgan.

**Who is she sitting behind?**

---

1. Mr. Turner isn't sitting next to Mrs. Turner.

---

2. The girl isn't sitting in front of her mother.

---

3. Miss Brown's desk isn't in front of Mr. Morgan.

---

4. That man isn't standing next to my desk.

---

5. The policeman isn't standing behind the waiter.

---

6. Mary's brother isn't sitting on the table.

---

## Exercise

Задайте вопросы к приведённым предложениям. Поставьте предлог в конец предложения, как принято в английском разговорном языке. Обратите внимание на выбор правильного вопросительного местоимения.

## MORE NUMBERS!

Опять числа!

## MORE NUMBERS!

21	twenty-one	31	thirty-one
22	twenty-two	32	thirty-two
23	twenty-three	33	thirty-three
24	twenty-four	40	forty
25	twenty-five	50	fifty
26	twenty-six	60	sixty
27	twenty-seven	70	seventy
28	twenty-eight	80	eighty
29	twenty-nine	90	ninety
30	thirty	100	a hundred



### How much is two and two?

Сколько будет два и два?

В такой конструкции глагол **be** в английском языке употребляется в настоящем времени, тогда как в русском используется будущее время или просто ставится тире: two and two is four = два и два *будет* четыре (два и два — четыре).

### Exercise

Выполняя это упражнение, Вы научитесь записывать числа словами на английском языке и заодно повторите арифметику.

$$2 + 2 = 4$$

Two and two is four.

Is two and two six?

— No, it's not.

Is two and two five?

— No, it's not.

How much is two and two?

— Two and two is four.



## Exercise

Example: 45 + 45 Forty-five and forty-five is ninety.

1. 63 + 12 \_\_\_\_\_

2. 34 + 7 \_\_\_\_\_

3. 75 + 21 \_\_\_\_\_

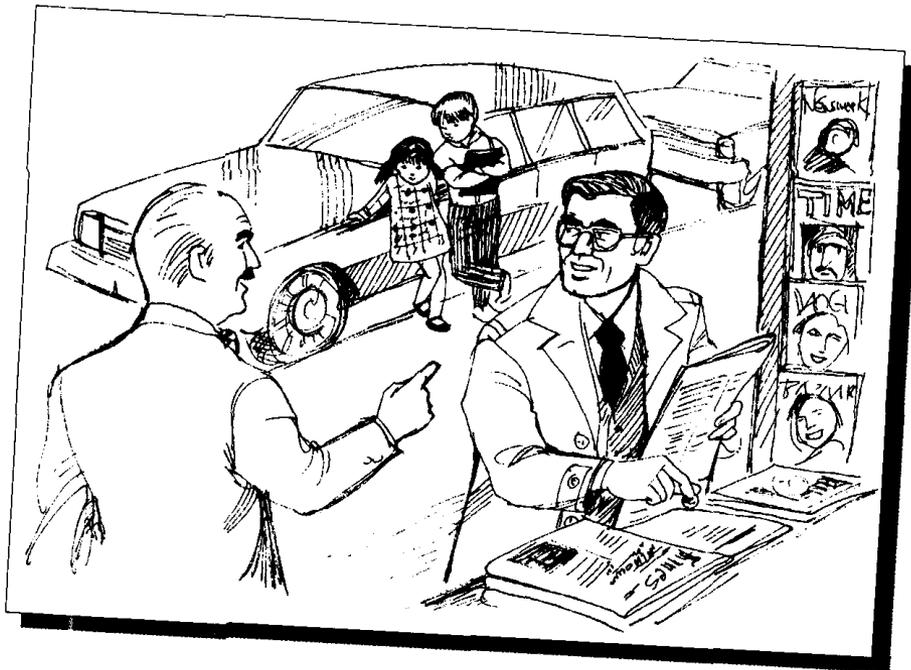
4. 49 + 32 \_\_\_\_\_

5. 62 + 15 \_\_\_\_\_

6. 59 + 35 \_\_\_\_\_

## HOW ARE YOU?

### Recording



- Hello, John!
- Oh, Bill! Hello! How are you?
- Fine, thank you. And you?
- Very well, thanks.
- How's your wife?
- She's fine.
- Is that your daughter over there?
- Yes, that's right. That's my daughter, Mary. And that's my son next to her.

## HOW ARE YOU?

*Как Вы поживаете?*

В этом диалоге приведено несколько обиходных английских выражений. Не нужно переводить каждое слово в этих сочетаниях, выучите их наизусть целиком.

**you** — *ты, Вы, вы*

В английском языке существует только одно местоимение второго лица для единственного и множественного чисел: **you**, которое употребляется как при обращении на *ты*, так и при обращении на *Вы*.

**Hello** обозначает *здравствуйте* и не имеет оттенка фамильярности. За ним не всегда ставится имя или должность человека, к которому Вы обращаетесь.

**Fine, thank you. And you?**  
*Спасибо, хорошо. А Вы?*

**Very well, thanks.**  
*Очень хорошо, спасибо.*

**Thanks** — сокращённая форма выражения **thank you**. Она носит более разговорный характер.

**How's your wife?**  
*А как поживает Ваша жена?*

**How's** — сокращённая форма от **how is**

**She's fine.**  
*У неё всё хорошо.*

# Vocabulary **three**

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 3.

<b>am</b>	<i>личная форма (1 л., ед. ч.) глагола be</i>	<b>her</b>	<i>она (в косвенном падеже)</i>
<b>I am</b>	я (есть)	<b>behind her</b>	за ней
<b>and</b>	и	<b>him</b>	<i>он (в косвенном падеже)</i>
<b>Two and two</b>	Два и два (есть)	<b>behind him</b>	за ним
<b>is four.</b>	четыре.	<b>his</b>	его
<b>are</b>	<i>личная форма (мн. ч.) глагола be</i>	<b>his chair</b>	его стул
<b>You are</b>	Вы/вы/ты (есть)	<b>how</b>	как
<b>behind</b>	за, сзади	<b>How are you?</b>	Как Вы поживаете?
<b>bicycle</b>	велосипед	<b>How's...?</b>	<i>сокращённая форма от how is</i>
<b>black</b>	чёрный	<b>How much...?</b>	Сколько...?
<b>boy</b>	мальчик	<b>hundred</b>	сто
<b>brother</b>	брат	<b>husband</b>	муж
<b>counter</b>	прилавок	<b>I</b>	я
<b>customer</b>	покупатель	<b>I'm</b>	<i>сокращённая форма от I am</i>
<b>daughter</b>	дочь	<b>in</b>	в
<b>eighty</b>	восемьдесят	<b>in a chair</b>	в кресле
<b>either</b>		<b>in front of</b>	перед
<b>isn't... either</b>	тоже не...	<b>isn't</b>	<i>сокращённая форма от is not</i>
<b>family</b>	семья	<b>lamp</b>	лампа
<b>father</b>	отец	<b>last name</b>	фамилия
<b>fifty</b>	пятьдесят	<b>man</b>	человек, мужчина
<b>fine</b>		<b>me</b>	<i>я (в косвенном падеже)</i>
<b>She's fine.</b>	У неё всё хорошо.	<b>behind me</b>	за мной
<b>forty</b>	сорок	<b>mother</b>	мать
<b>front</b>	<i>см. in front of</i>	<b>my</b>	мой, моя, моё
<b>girl</b>	девочка, девушка	<b>my car</b>	моя машина
<b>Hello!</b>	Здравствуйте!	<b>name</b>	имя
<b>her</b>	её	<b>first name</b>	имя
<b>her chair</b>	её стул	<b>last name</b>	фамилия
		<b>ninety</b>	девяносто
		<b>of</b>	<i>на русский язык не переводится</i>
		<b>a picture of a...</b>	изображение (кого, чего)
		<b>office</b>	офис, рабочий кабинет

<b>police car</b>	полицейская машина
<b>policeman</b>	полицейский
<b>red</b>	красный
<b>restaurant</b>	ресторан
<b>right</b>	правильный, правый
<b>That's right! ..., right?</b>	Это правда!/Да, это так! правда?
<b>salesclerk</b>	продавец, продавщица
<b>secretary</b>	секретарь, секретарша
<b>seventy</b>	семьдесят
<b>sidewalk</b>	тротуар
<b>sister</b>	сестра
<b>sitting</b>	см. <b>She's sitting.</b>
<b>she is sitting</b>	Она сидит.
<b>sixty</b>	шестьдесят
<b>son</b>	сын
<b>standing</b>	см. <b>He's standing.</b>
<b>he is standing</b>	Он стоит.
<b>store</b>	магазин
<b>street</b>	улица
<b>student</b>	студент(ка), школьник(-ница)

<b>teacher</b>	учитель(-ница), преподаватель(-ница)
<b>television</b>	телевизор
<b>Thanks.</b>	Спасибо.
<b>That's right!</b>	Правда!/Да, это так!
<b>thirty</b>	тридцать
<b>Very well!</b>	Очень хорошо!
<b>waiter</b>	официант
<b>well</b>	см. <b>Very well!</b>
<b>whose</b>	чей
<b>Whose chair is this?</b>	Чей это стул?
<b>wife</b>	жена
<b>woman</b>	женщина
<b>you</b>	ты/Вы/вы
<b>in front of you</b>	перед тобой/Вами/вами
<b>you're</b>	<i>сокращённая форма от you are</i>
<b>your</b>	твой/Ваш/ваш
<b>your desk</b>	твой/Ваш письменный стол

### Английский алфавит

<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>F</b>	<b>G</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>J</b>	<b>K</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>M</b>
a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m
<b>N</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>P</b>	<b>Q</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>S</b>	<b>T</b>	<b>U</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>W</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>Y</b>	<b>Z</b>
n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z

# Lesson four



a bottle of milk



a mug of beer



a pot of tea

bottle -- бутылка  
 a bottle of milk -- бутылка молока  
 mug -- кружка  
 beer -- пиво  
 pot -- посуда, горшок  
 tea -- чай  
 pot of tea -- чайник с заваренным чаем

cup -- чашка  
 Обратите внимание на употребление предлога of в выражениях типа a cup of tea, a glass of wine и т.д.

coffee -- кофе  
 glass -- стакан  
 wine -- вино  
 pitcher -- кувшин  
 water -- вода

**CIGARETTES, CIGARS,  
 AND MATCHES**  
 Сигареты, сигары и спички

cigarette -- сигарета  
 pack of cigarettes -- пачка сигарет

match -- спичка  
 box of matches -- коробок спичек  
 cigar -- сигара  
 box of cigars -- коробка сигар

These и those -- множественное число от this и that. These обозначает предметы, находящиеся вблизи от говорящего, а those -- относится к более удалённым предметам.

a cup of	tea
a pot of	coffee
a glass of	wine
a pitcher of	water
a bottle of	milk
a mug of	beer

## CIGARETTES, CIGARS, AND MATCHES

What's this?  
 -- It's a cigarette.



And what's that?  
 -- It's a pack of cigarettes.



This is a match.  
 And this is a box of matches.



This is a cigar.  
 And this is a box of cigars.



## HOW MANY PEOPLE ARE THERE? Сколько здесь человек?

Английское слово **people** (люди, народ) подразумевает множественное число, поэтому последующий глагол употребляется в форме множественного числа.

**men** — мужчины, люди  
**there are** — есть, имеются  
**women** — женщины  
**Yes, there are.**  
*Да. (Да, здесь есть).*

**No, there aren't.**  
*Нет. (Нет, здесь нет.)*

**There aren't** — сокращённая форма от **there are not**.  
**there's** — есть, имеется  
**There's** сокращённая форма от **there is**.  
**There** употребляется с существительными в единственном числе, а **there are** — с существительными во множественном.

**Is there only one?**  
*Здесь только один (одна)?*

**children** — дети  
**child** — ребёнок  
**people** — люди, народ  
**in all** — всего  
**etc.** — и т. д.

В таблице приведены четыре существительных, которые имеют особую форму множественного числа. Производные от них изменяются во множественном числе по тем же правилам:  
**policeman/policemen**

Обратите внимание на отличия в произношении гласных в корне в словах **man/men, woman/women**.

## HOW MANY PEOPLE ARE THERE?

### Recording



Look at this picture! One man, two men, three men. There are three men in this picture. Are there three women in the picture, too? Yes, there are. There are three men and three women in the picture.

Are there three boys in the picture, too? No, there aren't. Are there two boys? No, there aren't. How many boys are there in the picture? There's one boy in the picture. Is there only one? Yes, there is. There's only one. And how many girls are there? There are two girls.

Are there three children in the picture? Yes, there are. Are there three children under the table? No, there aren't. How many children are there under the table? There's only one child under the table.

How many people are there in all? There are nine people in all. Are there three people next to the window? No, there aren't. There's only one person next to the window. Look! It's Mr. Morgan!

one                      two, three, etc.

child	children
man	men
woman	women
person	people

# Action Questions

**Answer!**

Are there four men in the picture?  
How many men are there in the picture?  
And how many women are there in the picture?  
Are there three girls in the picture?  
How many girls are there in the picture?  
And how many boys are there?  
How many children are there in all?



## Exercise

1. How many men are there in the picture?

---

2. Are there three women in the picture, too?

---

3. Are there three boys or only one?

---

4. Are there five girls in the picture?

---

5. How many girls are there in the picture?

---

6. How many children are there in all?

---

7. How many children are there under the table?

---

8. Are there ten people or nine people in the picture?

---

## THERE ISN'T ANY MILK IN THE BOTTLE

*В бутылке нет молока*

## THERE ISN'T ANY MILK IN THE BOTTLE



**Look (at) ...!** – *Посмотри(те) (на) ...!*

**There aren't any glasses...**

*Нет стаканов...*

**some glasses** – *несколько стаканов*

**Is there any milk?**

*Есть молоко?*

**pitcher** – *кувшин*

**Some** и **any** – неопределённые местоимения, обозначающие количество. **Some** употребляется в утвердительных предложениях, **any** – в отрицательных и вопросительных.

There are **some** glasses on the counter.  
There aren't **any** glasses under the table.  
Is there **any** milk in the pitcher?

Местоимения **some** и **any** употребляются с существительными как в единственном, так и во множественном числе:

There **is some** water in the cup.  
There **are some** glasses on the table.

**Is there any...? Are there any...?**

**Is there** употребляется с существительными в единственном числе (без **some** или **any**), а также с неисчисляемыми существительными. **Are there** употребляется с существительными во множественном числе.

Look at the picture! How many glasses are there on the table? There are three glasses on the table. And how many glasses are there under the table? There aren't any glasses under the table!

Are there any glasses on the counter? Yes, there are. There are some glasses on the counter. How many glasses are there on the counter? There are two glasses on the counter.

Look at the pitcher! Is there any milk in the pitcher? Yes, there is. There's some milk in the pitcher. And is there any milk in the bottle? No, there isn't any milk in the bottle.

<b>Is there any...?</b>	coffee
	wine
	water
	beer
	tea

— *Yes, there is.*  
— *No, there isn't.*  
— *There's some...*  
— *There isn't any...*

<b>Are there any...?</b>	cups (of coffee)
	glasses (of wine)
	cars
	newspapers
	people

— *Yes, there are.*  
— *No, there aren't.*  
— *There are some...*  
— *There aren't any...*

## Action Questions

**Answer!**

Are there any glasses in the picture?  
How many glasses are there in the picture?  
Are there three bottles of milk on the counter?  
How many bottles of milk are there on the counter?  
And how many glasses are there on the counter?



## Exercise A

Example: There isn't any milk in the glass. (*the bottle*)

There's **some** milk in the bottle.

1. There isn't any beer in this bottle. (*that bottle*)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. There aren't any matches in that box. (*this box*)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. There aren't any newspapers over there. (*over here*)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. There isn't any water in that brown cup. (*white*)

\_\_\_\_\_

5. There aren't any cigarettes in this pack. (*that pack*)

\_\_\_\_\_



## Exercise B

Example: There are some people at the **station**. (*bus stop*)

Are there **any** people at the bus stop?

1. There's some milk in that **bottle**. (*pitcher*)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. There are some cars in the **garage**. (*street*)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. There are some books on Mr. Morgan's **desk**. (*chair*)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. There's some tea in Mary's **cup**. (*glass*)

\_\_\_\_\_

5. There are some people in that **car**. (*bus*)

\_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise A

### Exercise B

Эти упражнения помогут Вам усвоить употребление **some** и **any** в утвердительных, отрицательных и вопросительных предложениях. См. примеры.

Обратите внимание, что в некоторых случаях, когда предложение преобразуется из отрицательной в утвердительную форму, **there** (*там*) заменяется на **here** (*здесь*).

**brown** — *коричневый*

**white** — *белый*

**station** — *станция, вокзал*

**bus stop** — *автобусная остановка*

**garage** — *гараж*

# HOW MANY PEOPLE ARE THERE IN THE RESTAURANT?



## Exercise

Fill in the correct word.

Вставьте подходящее по смыслу слово.

Не забывайте, что первое слово предложения следует писать с прописной буквы.



## Exercise

Fill in the correct word: **some/any, are/aren't, is/isn't.**

This \_\_\_\_\_ a restaurant. Look at the table! There \_\_\_\_\_ two bottles on the table. Look at the big bottle! \_\_\_\_\_ there \_\_\_\_\_ wine in it? Yes, there \_\_\_\_\_ . There's \_\_\_\_\_ wine in the big bottle. And what about the small bottle? There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ wine in the small one.

Look at the glasses! There's \_\_\_\_\_ wine in the glasses in front of the women, but there isn't \_\_\_\_\_ wine in the glass in front of the man.

\_\_\_\_\_ there \_\_\_\_\_ cups on the table, too? Yes, there \_\_\_\_\_ . There \_\_\_\_\_ three cups on the table. \_\_\_\_\_ there \_\_\_\_\_ coffee in the cups? No, there \_\_\_\_\_ .

\_\_\_\_\_ there \_\_\_\_\_ people in this restaurant? Yes, there \_\_\_\_\_ . There are \_\_\_\_\_ customers sitting at the table, and there are \_\_\_\_\_ customers standing next to the door. \_\_\_\_\_ there a waiter, too? Yes, there \_\_\_\_\_ . \_\_\_\_\_ he sitting or standing? He's standing. Look! Three people \_\_\_\_\_ sitting, and four people \_\_\_\_\_ standing. There \_\_\_\_\_ seven people in this picture in all. \_\_\_\_\_ there \_\_\_\_\_ children in this picture? No, there \_\_\_\_\_ . There \_\_\_\_\_ children in this restaurant.

# NUMBERS 100 — 1,000

100	a hundred
101	a hundred and one
102	a hundred and two
120	a hundred and twenty
121	a hundred and twenty-one
130	a hundred and thirty
140	a hundred and forty
200	two hundred
342	three hundred and forty-two
469	four hundred and sixty-nine
535	five hundred and thirty-five
681	six hundred and eighty-one
726	seven hundred and twenty-six
853	eight hundred and fifty-three
999	nine hundred and ninety-nine
1,000	a thousand

## a hundred

Обратите внимание на употребление неопределённого артикля в словосочетаниях **a hundred** и **a thousand**, а также на употребление союза **and** после сотен: three hundred **and** forty-two.

Запомните, что к **hundred** и **thousand** не прибавляется окончание **-s** во множественном числе.



## Exercise

Write out the numbers.

Example: **998**

nine hundred and ninety-eight

1. **755**

\_\_\_\_\_

2. **173**

\_\_\_\_\_

3. **247**

\_\_\_\_\_

4. **111**

\_\_\_\_\_

5. **569**

\_\_\_\_\_

## Exercise

Write out the numbers.

Запишите словами данные числительные.

## HOW MUCH IS IT?

Сколько это стоит?

**cents** – *центы* (=1/100 доллара)

**It's a dollar twenty-five.**

*Это стоит один доллар двадцать пять центов.*

**It's a hundred and sixty-eight dollars and fifty-nine cents.**

*Это стоит сто шестьдесят восемь долларов и пятьдесят девять центов.*

В разговорном английском языке, если сумма не превышает 100 долларов, **cents** иногда опускается: "It's a dollar twenty-five", но "It's a hundred and sixty-eight dollars and fifty-nine cents".

## HOW MUCH IS IT?

Is a cup of coffee twenty cents? (\$.20 or 20¢)

— *No, it's not.*

Is it thirty cents? (\$.30 or 30¢)

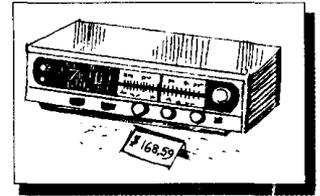
— *No, it's not.*

How much is a cup of coffee?

— *It's fifty cents. (\$.50 or 50¢)*

And how much is a glass of wine?

— *It's a dollar twenty-five. (\$1.25)*



How much is this radio?

— *It's a hundred and sixty-eight dollars and fifty-nine cents.*



## Exercise

Example: chair/\$182.90

How much is the chair?

It's a hundred and eighty-two dollars and ninety cents.

1. cassette player/\$36.19

2. calculator/\$105.00

3. desk/\$574.63

4. typewriter/\$708.54

# Vocabulary **four**

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 4.

<b>airport</b>	аэропорт
<b>any</b>	
<b>Is there any milk?</b>	Есть молоко?
<b>Are there any glasses?</b>	Есть стаканы?
<b>There isn't any milk.</b>	Молока нет.
<b>are</b>	
<b>there are</b>	есть, имеется
<b>there aren't</b>	нет
<b>they are</b>	они (есть)
<b>we are</b>	мы (есть)
<b>ashtray(s)</b>	пепельница(-ы)
<b>beer</b>	пиво
<b>bottle(s)</b>	бутылка(-и)
<b>box(es)</b>	ящик(и)
<b>Brazil</b>	Бразилия
<b>brown</b>	коричневый
<b>bus stop</b>	автобусная остановка
<b>but</b>	но
<b>Canadian</b>	канадец, канадка
<b>cent(s)</b>	цент(ы)
<b>child(ren)</b>	ребёнок (дети)
<b>cigar(s)</b>	сигара(-ы)
<b>cigarette(s)</b>	сигарета(-ы)
<b>coffee</b>	кофе
<b>cup(s)</b>	чашка(-и)
<b>dollar(s)</b>	доллар(ы)
<b>English</b>	англичанин/англичанка

<b>an example</b>	пример
<b>etc.</b>	и т. д.
<b>first name</b>	имя
<b>garage</b>	гараж
<b>glass(es)</b>	стакан(ы)
<b>green</b>	зелёный
<b>How many...?</b>	Сколько...?
<b>how much</b>	
<b>How much are two bottles of wine?</b>	Сколько стоят две бутылки вина?
<b>How much is it?</b>	Сколько это стоит?
<b>Italian</b>	итальянец, итальянка
<b>Italy</b>	Италия
<b>in all</b>	всего
<b>in the garage</b>	в гараже
<b>in the street</b>	на улице
<b>is</b>	
<b>there is</b>	есть, имеется
<b>there isn't</b>	нет
<b>Japan</b>	Япония
<b>Look!</b>	Смотри(те)!
<b>looking at</b>	смотрит
<b>Look at...!</b>	Посмотри(те) (на)...!
<b>match(es)</b>	спичка(-и)
<b>men</b>	люди, мужчины
<b>milk</b>	молоко
<b>mug(s)</b>	кружка(-и)

of	
cup of coffee	чашка кофе
pack of cigarettes	пачка сигарет
on	
on the floor	на полу
one	
this/that one	ЭТОТ/ТОТ
Which one...?	Который...?
only	только
only one	только один
over here	здесь
pack(s)	пачка(-и)
paper(s)	бумага(-и)
people	люди, народ
pitcher(s)	кувшин(ы), графин(ы)
pot (of tea)	чайник (с заваренным чаем)
some	
some milk	немного молока
some glasses	несколько стаканов
tea	чай
Thank you, sir!	Благодарю Вас, сэр!

there	
there is/are	есть, имеется/имеются
there isn't/ there aren't	нет
these	
these boys	ЭТИ мальчики
they	ОНИ
they're	<i>сокращённая форма от they are</i>
those	
those papers	те бумаги
train	поезд
water	вода
we	мы
we're	<i>сокращённая форма от we are</i>
What kind of...?	Что за...?
which	
Which car...?	Какая машина...?
Which one...?	Который (которая)...?
white	белый
wine	вино
women	женщины
yellow	жёлтый
you (plural)	ВЫ ( <i>множественное число</i> )

### Английский алфавит

<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>C</b>	<b>D</b>	<b>E</b>	<b>F</b>	<b>G</b>	<b>H</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>J</b>	<b>K</b>	<b>L</b>	<b>M</b>
a	b	c	d	e	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m
<b>N</b>	<b>O</b>	<b>P</b>	<b>Q</b>	<b>R</b>	<b>S</b>	<b>T</b>	<b>U</b>	<b>V</b>	<b>W</b>	<b>X</b>	<b>Y</b>	<b>Z</b>
n	o	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y	z

# Revision **one**

## WHO'S SITTING AT THE DESK?

Look at this picture! Is there a black telephone on the desk? Yes, there is. The telephone on the desk is black. And who's sitting at the desk? It's Mr. Morgan. The man sitting at the desk is Mr. Morgan.



### Exercise

*Example:* There's a man in the picture. It's Mr. Morgan.

*The man in the picture is Mr. Morgan.*

1. There's a map on the wall. It's big.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. There's a dog next to the window. It's black.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. There are some children in the street. They're Peter and Mary.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. There are some cassettes on the table. They're from Germany.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. A boy is standing behind Mrs. Morgan. It's Peter.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Two men are sitting over there. They're from France.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. A waiter is standing in front of me. He's Italian.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. Some people are sitting in the car. They're the Duvals.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## WHO'S SITTING AT THE DESK?

*Кто сидит за письменным столом?*

Этот раздел предназначен для повторения пройденного материала. Уделите ему, пожалуйста, времени и внимания не меньше, чем обычным урокам.

**The telephone on the desk is black.**

*Телефон на столе — чёрного цвета.*

**The man sitting at the desk is Mr. Morgan.**

*Человек, который сидит за столом (сидящий за столом), — мистер Морган.*

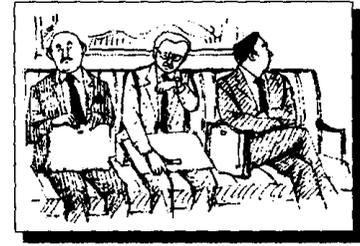
### Exercise

Составьте из двух предложений одно по приведённому образцу.

**Italian** — итальянец



This man is sitting.



These men are sitting.

**Exercise A**  
**Exercise B**

Поставьте подлежащее и сказуемое  
в форму множественного числа,  
как это указано в образце.



## Exercise A

*Example:* This man is sitting in the car.

*These men are sitting in the car.*

---

1. This plane is at the airport.

---

2. That child isn't American.

---

3. The secretary isn't at the office.

---



## Exercise B

*Example:* Is this man from France?

*Are these men from France?*

---

1. Is this car Japanese?

---

2. Is that woman standing?

---

3. Is that city in Italy?

---

4. Is this child sitting at the table?

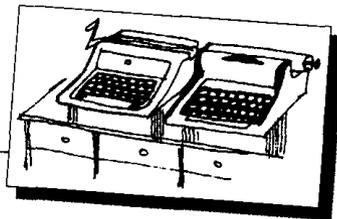
---



## Exercise A

*Example:* Those typewriters are big.

Those are big typewriters.



1. These women are French.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Those radios are small.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. These telephones are black.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. These cars are Japanese.

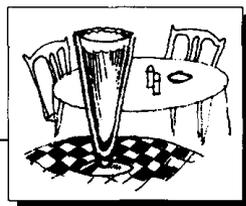
\_\_\_\_\_



## Exercise B

*Example:* This is a glass of beer.

There's beer in this glass.



1. That's a bottle of milk.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. That's a box of matches.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. This is a pack of cigarettes.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. This is a cup of coffee.

\_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise A

Измените структуру предложений, меняя местами слова.

### Exercise B

Измените структуру предложений, употребляя другую конструкцию.

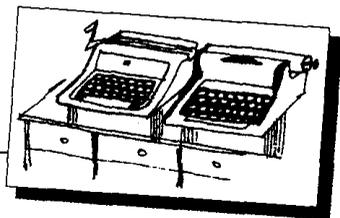
Отметьте, что в подобных предложениях **some** можно опустить:  
**There's (some) beer.**



## Exercise A

Example: Those typewriters are big.

Those are big typewriters.



1. These women are French.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Those radios are small.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. These telephones are black.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. These cars are Japanese.

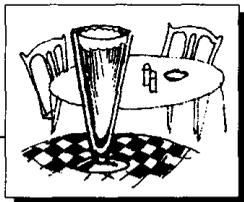
\_\_\_\_\_



## Exercise B

Example: This is a glass of beer.

There's beer in this glass.



1. That's a bottle of milk.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. That's a box of matches.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. This is a pack of cigarettes.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. This is a cup of coffee.

\_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise A

Измените структуру предложений, меняя местами слова.

### Exercise B

Измените структуру предложений, употребляя другую конструкцию.

Отметьте, что в подобных предложениях **some** можно опустить:  
**There's (some) beer.**

### Exercise A

Это упражнение поможет Вам проверить, правильно ли Вы употребляете притяжательные и личные местоимения.



## Exercise A

*Example:* I'm sitting at a desk.

*It's my desk.*

---

1. You're standing next to a car.

---

2. Mrs. Morgan is looking at a cassette.

---

3. Mr. Morgan is sitting in an office.

---

4. Mary is sitting in a chair.

---

5. I'm looking at a magazine.

---

### Exercise B

Повторяем притяжательный падеж существительных. Объедините два предложения в одно.

*first name – имя*



## Exercise B

*Example:* This is Mr. Morgan. His first name is John.

*Mr. Morgan's first name is John.*

---

1. This is Janet. Her desk is brown.

---

2. That's my son. His bicycle is in the garage.

---

3. This is Mrs. Duval. Her husband is from Paris.

---

4. That's my teacher. His car is small.

---

5. This is Mr. Morgan. His secretary's name is Janet.

---

# WHICH CARS ARE FROM ITALY?



**The car** in the garage is from the United States.

**The ones** in the street are from Italy.

Which car is from the United States?

– *The one in the garage is.*

Which cars are from Italy?

– *The ones in the street are.*



## Exercise

Example: Which papers are white? (*on the floor*)

*The ones on the floor are.*

---

1. Which maps are green? (*on the wall*)

---

2. Which waiter is French? (*behind the table*)

---

3. Which cars are yellow? (*in the garage*)

---

4. Which child is Mrs. Morgan's daughter? (*over there*)

---

5. Which bicycles are from England? (*next to the car*)

---

**That car is in the street.**

*Та машина – на улице.*

**This car is in the garage.**

*Эта машина – в гараже.*

**The ones in the street are from Italy.**

*Те, которые на улице, – из Италии.*

**The one in the garage.**

*Та, которая в гараже.*

Мы уже встречали местоимение **one** в выражениях **this one, the American one** и т.д. Это местоимение заменяет существительное в единственном числе: вместо **the car** можно сказать **the one**. Существительные во множественном числе заменяются местоимением **ones**: **the cars = the ones**.

**white** – белый

**green** – зелёный

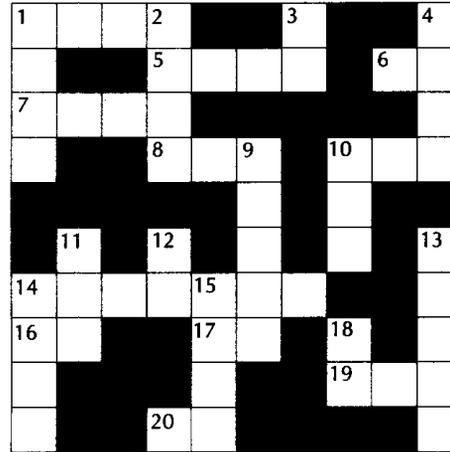
**yellow** – жёлтый

## A CROSSWORD PUZZLE

*Кроссворд*

Это упражнение будет одновременно и полезным, и интересным. Заполняя клеточки в кроссворде, Вы повторите выученные слова и грамматические правила.

## A CROSSWORD PUZZLE



### Exercise

**across** – по горизонтали

**down** – по вертикали

#### ACROSS

- \_\_\_\_\_ 's her name?
- It's not over there, it's over \_\_\_\_\_.
- The table is next \_\_\_\_\_ the chair.
- Mr. Murphy's first \_\_\_\_\_ is Bill.
- Is London a city? \_\_\_\_\_ it is.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ is at the bus stop.
- France is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- The Amazon is \_\_\_\_\_ Brazil.
- Mr. Morgan isn't French; \_\_\_\_\_'s American.
- \_\_\_\_\_ and two is three.
- Bill is \_\_\_\_\_ the airport.

#### DOWN

- Beujolais is the name of a \_\_\_\_\_.
- The people aren't sitting; \_\_\_\_\_'re standing.
- I'm standing in front of you; you're standing behind \_\_\_\_\_.
- One dog; two \_\_\_\_\_.
- The salesclerk and the customer are standing in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- The television isn't small; it's \_\_\_\_\_.
- Peter is Mr. Morgan's \_\_\_\_\_.
- This is \_\_\_\_\_ English car.
- \_\_\_\_\_ and ten is thirteen.
- New York is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- This telephone is white; \_\_\_\_\_ one is black.
- Is the U.S. a city? \_\_\_\_\_, it's not.

## A OR AN?

a boy  
a car  
a dog, etc.

an ashtray  
an English car  
an Italian city, etc.



### Exercise A

Example: London is an English city.

1. There's \_\_\_\_\_ American car in the garage.
2. That's \_\_\_\_\_ small German typewriter.
3. Rome is \_\_\_\_\_ Italian city.
4. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ airport in this city?
5. Is this \_\_\_\_\_ glass of American wine?



### Exercise B

Example: This is a plane. (*big*)

The plane is big.

1. This is a car. (*Japanese*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. This is a boy. (*standing at the bus stop*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. This is a newspaper. (*black and white*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. This is a woman. (*from Germany*)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. This is a brown dog. (*sitting next to the door*)  
\_\_\_\_\_

## A OR AN?

Неопределённый артикль **a** принимает форму **an**, если за ним следует слово, которое начинается с гласного: (**a, e, i, o, u**).

an English car, an office, но a dog

Не забывайте об этом, выполняя  
Упражнение А.

English – *английский*

# HE, SHE, OR IT?

Is **this** Mr. Turner?

-Yes, **it is**.

Is **Mr. Turner** Canadian?

-Yes, **he is**.

## Exercise A Exercise B

Выполняя эти упражнения, Вы повторите употребление местоимений **he, she** и **it** в неполных ответах.

**Canadian** – канадец



## Exercise A



Mr. Turner

1. Is this Mr. Turner? \_\_\_\_\_

2. Is Mr. Turner Canadian? \_\_\_\_\_

3. Is this Miss López? \_\_\_\_\_

4. Who is it, Miss López or Mrs. Schulz? \_\_\_\_\_

5. Is Mrs. Schulz German? \_\_\_\_\_



Mrs. Schulz



## Exercise B

Example: Is this your red car?

Yes, **it is**.

No, **it's not**.

1. Is Miss Brown from New York?  
Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

No, \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Is the train at the station?  
Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

No, \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Is Bill's car in the garage?  
Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

No, \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Is Janet standing at the bus stop?  
Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

No, \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Is that Mr. Morgan's son?  
Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

No, \_\_\_\_\_.

**train** – поезд



## Exercise A

Example: I'm from New York. (*Chicago*)

I'm not from Chicago.

1. The man is at the station. (*airport*)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. I'm American. (*French*)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. The dog is black and white. (*brown*)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. You're sitting. (*standing*)

\_\_\_\_\_

## IT'S SMALL, BUT NOT FROM JAPAN

Is your car small?

– Yes, it is.

Is it from Japan?

– No, it's not.

*It's small, **but not** from Japan.*



## Exercise B

Example: Are Mr. and Mrs. Duval French? Are they **from Dijon**?

They're French, **but not from Dijon.**

1. Is Paris a city? Is it a **German city**?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Is that a bottle? Is it a **bottle of wine**?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Are you sitting? Are you sitting **on the floor**?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Are those books big? Are they **red**?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Is Mr. Morgan in his office? Is he **at his desk**?

\_\_\_\_\_

## Exercise A

Поставьте предложения  
в отрицательную форму. См. пример.

## IT'S SMALL, BUT NOT FROM JAPAN

*Это маленькое, но не из Японии*

**but** – *но*

## Exercise B

Ответьте на оба вопроса одним  
предложением, употребляя  
конструкцию **but not**.

Заметьте, при такой конструкции  
подлежащее и сказуемое второй части  
сложного предложения обычно  
опускаются.

**on the floor** – *на полу*



## Exercise A

Example: I'm from New York. (*Chicago*)

I'm not from Chicago.

1. The man is at the station. (*airport*)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. I'm American. (*French*)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. The dog is black and white. (*brown*)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. You're sitting. (*standing*)

\_\_\_\_\_

## IT'S SMALL, BUT NOT FROM JAPAN

Is your car small?

– Yes, it is.

Is it from Japan?

– No, it's not.

*It's small, **but not** from Japan.*

## IT'S SMALL, BUT NOT FROM JAPAN

*Это маленькое, но не из Японии*

**but – no**

## Exercise B

Ответьте на оба вопроса одним предложением, употребляя конструкцию **but not**.

Заметьте, при такой конструкции подлежащее и сказуемое второй части сложного предложения обычно опускаются.

**on the floor – на полу**



## Exercise B

Example: Are Mr. and Mrs. Duval French? Are they **from Dijon**?

They're French, **but not from Dijon**.

1. Is Paris a city? Is it a **German city**?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Is that a bottle? Is it a **bottle of wine**?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Are you sitting? Are you sitting **on the floor**?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Are those books big? Are they **red**?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Is Mr. Morgan in his office? Is he **at his desk**?

\_\_\_\_\_

# HE'S LOOKING AT HER

В таблице приведены все изученные личные местоимения, которые могут выступать в роли подлежащих и дополнений.

## Exercise

Дополните предложения подходящими по смыслу местоимениями-дополнениями (**me, you, him, her, it**).

I'm standing in front of Bill.  
Bill is standing behind **me**.

I	me
you	you
he	him
she	her
it	it



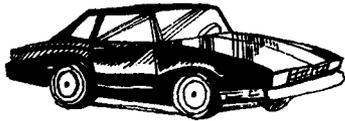
## Exercise

*Examples:* **Mrs. Morgan** is standing in front of Peter.  
Peter is standing behind her .  
The newspaper isn't under **the desk**.  
It's on it .

1. **Mary** is looking at Bill.  
Bill is looking at \_\_\_\_\_.
2. **I'm** sitting in front of the desk.  
The desk is behind \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The magazines aren't under **the typewriter**.  
They're next to \_\_\_\_\_.
4. **Susan** is looking at her husband.  
Her husband is looking at \_\_\_\_\_.
5. **You're** standing in front of the car.  
The car is behind \_\_\_\_\_.
6. **John** is standing next to Susan.  
Susan is standing next to \_\_\_\_\_.
7. **I'm** looking at my son.  
My son is looking at \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The paper isn't under **the book**.  
It's on \_\_\_\_\_.

paper – бумага

# WHAT'S THE QUESTION?



**Whose** car is this?  
**How much** is the car?  
**How many** cars are there in the picture?  
**What kind of** car is it?



**Who's** this?  
**What nationality** is she?  
**What city** is she in/from?  
**What country** is she in/from?



## Exercise

Example: Mr. Tanaka is in **New York**.

*What city is Mr. Tanaka in?*

---

1. This is **Bill**.

---

2. The magazine is a **dollar fifty**.

---

3. Mr. Duval is from **France**.

---

4. Mr. Morgan is **American**.

---

5. There are **three** people at the bus stop.

---

6. This is **Mr. Morgan's** office.

---

7. That's a **German** plane.

---

8. Mrs. Morgan is in **the U.S.**

---

## Exercise

Задайте вопросы к выделенным словам.

## Review Test 1

*Контрольная работа номер один*

Выполняя эту контрольную работу,  
Вы повторите слова и грамматические  
правила из первых четырёх разделов.

**Place an X in the correct box.**

*Поставьте крестик в клеточке перед  
правильным ответом.*

## REVIEW TEST

Place an **X** in the correct box.

1. Mr. Morgan, this is Mr. Turner.  
 a. And you?  
 b. Nice to meet you!  
 c. Fine, thank you!
2. Is this Mrs. Morgan?  
 a. Yes, it is.  
 b. Yes, she is.  
 c. Mrs. Morgan is.
3. What's Miss Brown?  
 a. It's a secretary.  
 b. She's secretary.  
 c. She's a secretary.
4. Mr. Duval is French.  
 a. What city is he from?  
 b. Where is he?  
 c. What nationality is he?
5. What country is Tokyo in?  
 a. It's Japan.  
 b. It's in Japan.  
 c. It's Japanese.
6. This is a radio.  
 a. Where is it?  
 b. What's this?  
 c. What's over there?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ a box of cigars.  
 a. That's  
 b. Those are  
 c. This
8. \_\_\_\_\_ is that bicycle?  
 a. Who  
 b. How much  
 c. What
9. It's a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. big, green German car  
 b. German, big green car  
 c. green, German big car
10. Which book is on the table?  
 a. The red is.  
 b. The red one is.  
 c. The book is red.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ dog is that?  
 a. Who's  
 b. What kind of  
 c. How many
12. Mary Morgan is Mr. Morgan's daughter.  
 a. He's her daughter.  
 b. She's his daughter.  
 c. She's her daughter.
13. Are you a student?  
 a. Yes, I am.  
 b. Yes, we are.  
 c. Yes, you are.
14. I'm looking at her; \_\_\_\_\_ looking at me.  
 a. I'm  
 b. she's  
 c. he's

15. Mrs. Turner is next to Mrs. Duval.  
 a. She's next to him.  
 b. He's next to her.  
 c. She's next to her.
16. Twenty-three and fifty is\_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. seventy-three  
 b. three and seventy  
 c. seven-three
17. There \_\_\_\_\_ any milk in the glass.  
 a. is  
 b. isn't  
 c. aren't
18. \_\_\_\_\_ books on the desk.  
 a. There are some  
 b. There's some  
 c. There are any
19. Who's sitting, Mrs. Morgan or Mr. Morgan?  
 a. Mr. Morgan's.  
 b. Is Mr. Morgan.  
 c. Mr. Morgan is.
20. Here you are!  
 a. Please.  
 b. You're welcome.  
 c. Thank you.

Закончив эту работу, сверьте Ваши ответы с теми, что приведены в конце книги. Если Вы сделали более пяти ошибок, следует тщательно повторить разделы 1–4.

# Lesson five

## WHAT TIME IS IT?

*Который час?*

**clock** – часы

**now** – сейчас

**It's one o'clock.**

*Сейчас один час.*

Обратите внимание на оборот **it's**, который употребляется, когда нужно сообщить время.

## WHAT TIME IS IT?



This is a clock.

Look at the clock!

It's one o'clock.



Now look at this clock!

Is it one o'clock now?

– *No, it's not.*

*It's two o'clock.*

Is it two o'clock now?

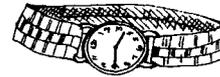
– *No, it's not.*

What time is it?

– *It's three o'clock.*



It's three-thirty.



It's a quarter to four.



It's a quarter past four.

**three-thirty**

*половина четвёртого (три тридцать)*

**a quarter to four**

*без четверти четыре*

**a quarter past four**

*четверть пятого*

Обратите внимание: как показано в таблице, чтобы указать на время в первой половине часа, употребляется **past**:

**ten past six** = *десять минут седьмого (шесть часов десять минут)*

Если нужно определить момент времени во второй половине часа, используют предлог **to**:

**twenty-five to seven** = *без двадцати пяти семь*

**noon** – *полдень*

**midnight** – *полночь*

6:00

six o'clock

6:30

six-thirty

6:05

five past six

6:35

twenty-five to seven

6:10

ten past six

6:45

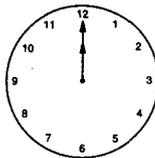
a quarter to seven

6:15

a quarter past six

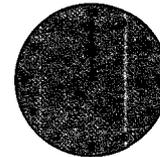
6:50

ten to seven



It's twelve o'clock.

It's noon.



It's twelve o'clock

It's midnight.

# THE FLIGHT ATTENDANT IS SPEAKING TO THEM

## Recording

The plane is going to London. The flight attendant is standing in front of the passengers. And what are the passengers doing? They're sitting and listening to the flight attendant. They're listening to her, and she's speaking to them.

**They're** listening to her.

She's speaking to **them**.



I	me
you	you
he	him
she	her
it	it
we	us
they	them

## Action Questions

**Answer!**

- Is the flight attendant sitting?
- Is she sitting or standing?
- Is she listening or speaking?
- Is she speaking to me?
- And what are the passengers doing?



## Exercise

*Example:* I'm speaking to the flight attendant.

*She's listening to me.*

- Mrs. Bennett is speaking to Mr. Bennett.  
He's \_\_\_\_\_.
- We're speaking to the children.  
They're \_\_\_\_\_.
- The students are speaking to the teacher.  
He's \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm speaking to you.  
You're \_\_\_\_\_.

## THE FLIGHT ATTENDANT IS SPEAKING TO THEM

*Стюардесса говорит с ними*

passengers — пассажиры

**They're listening to her, and she's speaking to them.**

Они слушают её, а она говорит с ними. Глаголы в данном предложении употребляются в форме настоящего длительного времени: **They're listening, she is speaking**. Эта форма обозначает длительные действия (процессы), происходящие в данный момент.

В таблице приведены английские личные местоимения: в левой колонке — местоимения, выполняющие функцию подлежащих (**they're listening**), а в правой — дополнений (**he's listening to them**).

Как и в русском, в английском языке форма множественного числа личных местоимений не изменяется по родам.

**us** — нас, нам

### Exercise

С помощью этого упражнения Вы сможете повторить личные местоимения, выполняющие функцию дополнения.

Выполняя эти упражнения,  
Вы повторите предлоги и глаголы.

**Exercise A**  
**Fill in the correct word.**

*Вставьте подходящие по смыслу предлоги.*



## Exercise A

*Fill in the correct word: at, of, to, by, from.*

1. The plane is \_\_\_\_\_ the airport.
2. Bill and Mary are going \_\_\_\_\_ New York.
3. We're coming \_\_\_\_\_ London.
4. Are you going \_\_\_\_\_ train?
5. Mr. Schulz is drinking a cup \_\_\_\_\_ coffee.

**Exercise B**  
**Fill in the blanks using the words in the box.**

*Вставьте наиболее подходящий по смыслу глагол из приведённых в колонке справа.*

**drink** – пить  
**read** – читать  
**write** – писать  
**look** – смотреть

**postcard** – открытка

**sandwich** – бутерброд, сэндвич



## Exercise B

*Fill in the blanks using the words in the box.*

1. Miss Santos is \_\_\_\_\_ to the radio.
2. The flight attendant is \_\_\_\_\_ to the passengers.
3. Who's \_\_\_\_\_ that newspaper?
4. Mrs. Bennett is \_\_\_\_\_ the name on the postcard.
5. Is this bus \_\_\_\_\_ to Boston?
6. The passengers are \_\_\_\_\_ coffee.
7. Who's \_\_\_\_\_ in Mrs. Morgan's chair?
8. Mr. Bennett is \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich.
9. The teacher is \_\_\_\_\_ at the map.
10. The English plane is \_\_\_\_\_ from London.

reading  
speaking  
going  
listening  
sitting  
writing  
coming  
eating  
drinking  
looking

# MR. MORGAN IS ON THE PHONE

## Recording

What's Mr. Morgan doing now? He's on the phone. He's calling his office. Who's he speaking to? He's speaking to his secretary, Janet Brown. Where is Mr. Morgan? Is he at home? No, he's not. He's in London. He's in his hotel room in London. Janet is at the office in New York.

What number is Mr. Morgan calling?  
He's calling 863-9527  
(eight, six, three—nine, five, two, seven).

## Action Questions

**Answer!**

Is Mr. Morgan on the phone?  
Is he speaking to you?  
Who's he speaking to?  
Is he at home now?  
Where is he?  
Is he calling you or his secretary?  
What number is he calling?



**MR. MORGAN IS ON THE PHONE**  
*Мистер Морган у телефона*

**Phone** — сокращённая разговорная форма от слова **telephone**.

Обратите внимание, что в этой конструкции употребляется предлог **on**.

**What's Mr. Morgan doing now?**  
*Что сейчас делает мистер Морган?*

**He's calling his office.**  
*Он звонит в свой офис.*

**at home** — дома  
**hotel room** — номер в гостинице  
В словосочетаниях **hotel room** и **telephone number** существительные **hotel** и **telephone** употребляются в качестве определений.

**What number is Mr. Morgan calling?**  
*По какому номеру звонит мистер Морган?*

**telephone numbers** — номера телефонов

## Exercise

Write out the telephone numbers.

Example: 914-3783

*nine, one, four—three, seven, eight, three*

---

1. 283-4679

---

2. 612-4873

---

3. 327-1834

---

**THERE ISN'T ANYTHING  
ON THE CHAIR**

*На стуле ничего нет*

**Is there anything...?**

*Есть ли что-нибудь...?*

**There's something...**

*Что-то есть...*

**There isn't anyone ...**

*Никого нет...*

**Is there anyone ...?**

*Есть кто-нибудь...?*

**There's someone ...**

*Кто-то есть...*

Из раздела 4 мы уже знаем, что **any** употребляется в отрицательных и вопросительных, а **some** — в утвердительных предложениях. Это же правило относится и к **anything/anyone** и **something/someone**.

**THERE ISN'T ANYTHING ON THE CHAIR**

**Recording**

Is there an ashtray on the chair?

— *No, there isn't.*

What is there on the chair?

— *There isn't anything on the chair.*

Is there anything on the desk?

— *Yes, there is.*

*There's something on the desk.*

What is there on the desk?

— *There's an ashtray on the desk.*



Is there a man in the car?

— *No, there isn't.*

Who is there in the car?

— *There isn't anyone in the car.*

Is there anyone next to the car?

— *Yes, there is.*

*There's someone next to the car.*

Who's next to the car?

— *Mr. Morgan is.*

Is there **anything**...?

— *No, there isn't anything...*

— *Yes, there's something...*

Is there **anyone**...?

— *No, there isn't anyone...*

— *Yes, there's someone...*

# Action Questions

- Answer!** Is there anything on the desk?  
**Excuse me!** There isn't anything on the desk, or  
there's something on the desk?  
What is there on the desk?
- Excuse me!** Is there anyone next to the car?  
There isn't anyone next to the car, or  
there's someone next to the car?
- Excuse me!** Is there anyone in the car?  
There's someone in the car, or  
there isn't anyone in the car?



## Exercise

**Example:** There's something in the **glass**. (*cup*)

*There **isn't anything** in the cup.*

---

1. There's something under the **chair**. (*table*)

---

2. There's someone in front of the **car**. (*bus*)

---

3. There's something on Mr. Morgan's **desk**. (*chair*)

---

4. There's someone on the **bus**. (*train*)

---

5. There's something next to the **chair**. (*desk*)

---

## Exercise

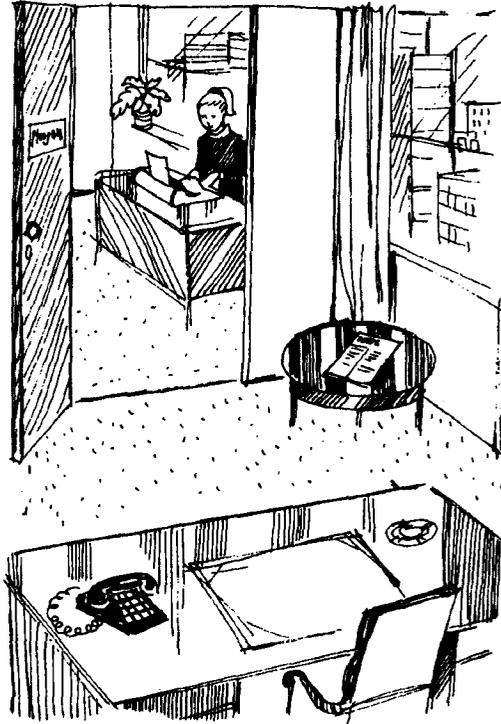
Поставьте предложения  
в отрицательную форму, употребляя  
**anyone** и **anything**. См. пример.

## Exercise

Вставьте выделенные слова в текст.

## Exercise

Fill in the correct word: **anything, something, anyone, someone**



This is Mr. Morgan's office in New York. Is Mr Morgan in his office? No, he's not. Who's in Mr. Morgan's office? There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ in his office.

Look at the table in Mr. Morgan's office. Is there a book on the table? No, there isn't. Is there a magazine? No, there isn't a magazine either. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ on the table? Yes, there is. There's \_\_\_\_\_ on the table. It's a newspaper. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ next to the newspaper? No, there isn't. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ next to it.

Now look at Janet's office. Is there a newspaper on Janet's desk, too? No, there isn't. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ on her desk? Yes there is. There's \_\_\_\_\_ on her desk? It's her typewriter.

Is Mr. Morgan in Janet's office? No, he's not. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ in Janet's office? Yes, there is. There's \_\_\_\_\_ in her office. Who's in Janet's office? Janet is, of course!

... of course! — ... конечно!

# Vocabulary **five**

---

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 5.

<b>anyone</b>	кто-нибудь	<b>o'clock (1, 2, 3 o'clock, etc.)</b>	час (1, 2, 3 часа и т. д.)
<b>anything</b>	что-нибудь	<b>on</b>	
<b>at</b>		<b>on the phone</b>	по телефону
<b>at 5 o'clock</b>	в пять часов	<b>passenger</b>	пассажир
<b>at home</b>	дома (у себя)	<b>past</b>	
<b>by</b>		<b>a quarter past...</b>	четверть...
<b>by bus</b>	автобусом	<b>phone</b>	<i>сокращение от telephone</i>
<b>calling</b>	звонить	<b>postcard</b>	открытка
<b>(on the phone)</b>	(по телефону)	<b>quarter</b>	четверть
<b>clock</b>	часы	<b>a quarter to...</b>	без четверти...
<b>coming from</b>	приходить из	<b>a quarter past...</b>	четверть...
<b>drink</b>	пить	<b>read</b>	читать
<b>eating</b>	есть	<b>room</b>	комната
<b>flight attendant</b>	стюардесса	<b>hotel room</b>	номер в гостинице
<b>from</b>		<b>sandwich</b>	бутерброд, сэндвич
<b>coming from</b>	приходит из	<b>someone</b>	кто-то
<b>go to</b>	идти в	<b>something</b>	что-то
<b>home</b>		<b>speak</b>	говорить
<b>at home</b>	дома (у себя)	<b>them</b>	
<b>hotel room</b>	номер в гостинице	<b>listen to them</b>	слушать их
<b>How...?</b>	Как...?	<b>speak to them</b>	говорить им
<b>listen</b>	слушать	<b>thirty</b>	
<b>midnight</b>	полночь	<b>It's three-thirty</b>	Три часа тридцать минут.
<b>noon</b>	полдень	<b>time</b>	
<b>now</b>	сейчас	<b>What time is it?</b>	Который час?
<b>number</b>	номер	<b>to</b>	
<b>telephone number</b>	номер телефона	<b>go to</b>	идти
		<b>listen to</b>	слушать
		<b>speak to</b>	говорить
		<b>write to</b>	писать

# Vocabulary **five**

---

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 5.

<b>anyone</b>	кто-нибудь
<b>anything</b>	что-нибудь
<b>at</b>	
<b>at 5 o'clock</b>	в пять часов
<b>at home</b>	дома (у себя)
<b>by</b>	
<b>by bus</b>	автобусом
<b>calling</b>	звонить
<b>(on the phone)</b>	(по телефону)
<b>clock</b>	часы
<b>coming from</b>	приходить из
<b>drink</b>	пить
<b>eating</b>	есть
<b>flight attendant</b>	стюардесса
<b>from</b>	
<b>coming from</b>	приходит из
<b>go to</b>	идти в
<b>home</b>	
<b>at home</b>	дома (у себя)
<b>hotel room</b>	номер в гостинице
<b>How...?</b>	Как...?
<b>listen</b>	слушать
<b>midnight</b>	полночь
<b>noon</b>	полдень
<b>now</b>	сейчас
<b>number</b>	номер
<b>telephone number</b>	номер телефона

<b>o'clock (1, 2,</b>	час (1, 2,
<b>3 o'clock, etc.)</b>	3 часа и т. д.)
<b>on</b>	
<b>on the phone</b>	по телефону
<b>passenger</b>	пассажир
<b>past</b>	
<b>a quarter past...</b>	четверть...
<b>phone</b>	<i>сокращение от telephone</i>
<b>postcard</b>	открытка
<b>quarter</b>	четверть
<b>a quarter to...</b>	без четверти...
<b>a quarter past...</b>	четверть...
<b>read</b>	читать
<b>room</b>	комната
<b>hotel room</b>	номер в гостинице
<b>sandwich</b>	бутерброд, сэндвич
<b>someone</b>	кто-то
<b>something</b>	что-то
<b>speak</b>	говорить
<b>them</b>	
<b>listen to them</b>	слушать их
<b>speak to them</b>	говорить им
<b>thirty</b>	
<b>It's three-thirty</b>	Три часа тридцать минут.
<b>time</b>	
<b>What time is it?</b>	Который час?
<b>to</b>	
<b>go to</b>	идти
<b>listen to</b>	слушать
<b>speak to</b>	говорить
<b>write to</b>	писать

<b>a quarter to</b>	без четверти...
<b>us</b>	нам, нас
<b>speak to us</b>	говорить нам
<b>listen to us</b>	слушать нас

<b>What time is it?</b>	Который час?
<b>What time is the plane going...?</b>	В каком часу вылетает самолёт...?
<b>Who... to?</b>	Кому...?
<b>write</b>	писать

## TODAY IS WEDNESDAY

Сегодня среда

## TODAY IS WEDNESDAY



**Tomorrow is Thursday.**

*Завтра четверг.*

**Yesterday was Tuesday.**

*Вчера был вторник.*

**What day is today?**

*Какой сегодня день?*

**the day after tomorrow**

*послезавтра*

**Was yesterday Tuesday?**

— Yes, it was.

*Вчера был вторник?*

— Да.

**Was the day before yesterday Sunday?**

— No, it wasn't.

*Позавчера было воскресенье?*

— Нет.

**Was** — форма прошедшего времени глагола **be**.

**Wasn't** — сокращённая форма от **was not**.

Неполные ответы с **was** и **wasn't** образуются по тем же правилам, что и ответы с **is** и **isn't**.

В английском языке глаголы не изменяются по родам.

**week** — неделя

**month** — месяц

**How many weeks are there in a month?**

*Сколько недель в месяце?*

Today is Wednesday.

Tomorrow is Thursday.

Yesterday was Tuesday.

Is today Thursday? No, it's not. What day is today? Today is Wednesday. What about tomorrow? What day is tomorrow? Is tomorrow Friday? No, it's not. Tomorrow is Thursday. And what about the day after tomorrow? The day after tomorrow is Friday.

What about yesterday? Was yesterday Tuesday? Yes, it was. Was the day before yesterday Sunday? No, it wasn't. The day before yesterday was Monday.

a week →

S	M	T	W	T	F	S
1	2	3	4	5	6	7
15	16	17	18	19	20	21
22	23	24	25	26	27	28
29	30					

Look! Is this a day? No, it's not. It's a week. There are seven days in a week, right? That's right, there are seven days in a week.

And what's this? Is this a week, too?

No, it's not. This is a month. How many weeks are there in a month? There are four weeks in a month.

S	M	T	W	T	F	S
[A large black rectangular area representing a month]						

← a month

## Action Questions

**Answer!**

Are there seven days in a week?

And how many weeks are there in a month?

Today is Wednesday. Is tomorrow Friday?

What day is tomorrow?

And what's the day after tomorrow?

Was yesterday Tuesday?

Was the day before yesterday Sunday?

What was the day before yesterday?



## Exercise

1. What day is today?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What about tomorrow?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What day was yesterday?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What was the day before yesterday?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. And what about the day after tomorrow?  
\_\_\_\_\_



Look at the calendar.

calendar – календарь

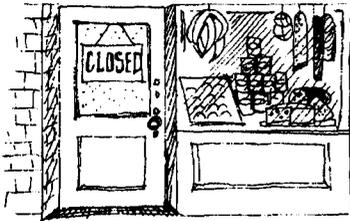
## THE STORE IS CLOSED ON SUNDAY

### THE STORE IS CLOSED ON SUNDAY

Магазин закрыт в воскресенье

Обратите внимание, что с днями недели употребляется предлог **on**:

**on** Sunday – в воскресенье  
**on** Monday – в понедельник и т.д.



Today is Sunday. Is there anyone in the store?

— No, there isn't.

The store is closed on Sunday.



Today is Monday. Is there anyone in the store today?

— Yes, there is.

The store is open on Monday.

open – открыт

## AT THE STORE

В магазине

**morning** — утро  
**in Mrs. Morgan's hand**  
в руке у миссис Морган

**she has** — у неё (есть)  
**Does she have ...?**  
У неё есть ...?  
**right (hand)** — правая (рука)  
**Yes, she does.** — Да.  
**left** — левый (-ая)  
**No, she doesn't.** — Нет.  
**Do you have ...?**  
У тебя (у Вас/вас) есть...?

Обратите внимание, что в данном примере глагол **have** употребляется не в форме настоящего длительного времени, как глаголы, встречавшиеся нам в последних уроках (**I'm sitting, you're standing** и т.д.), а в форме простого настоящего времени: **I/you/we/they have, he/she/it has**.

В следующем разделе будут приведены другие примеры глаголов в форме простого настоящего времени. Вопросительная и отрицательная формы глагола **have** образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола **do**:

**She has a box.**  
**Does she have a box?**  
**She doesn't have a box.**

Как Вы видите, в вопросительной и отрицательной формах глагол **have** остаётся без изменений, а спрягается вспомогательный глагол **do** (**I/you/we/they do, he/she/it does**).

**Doesn't** и **don't** — сокращённые формы от **does not** и **do not**.

## AT THE STORE



Today is Monday. It's five past nine on Monday morning. The store is open now. Is there anyone in the store? Yes, there is. There's a man in the store. He's the salesclerk, right? That's right, he's the salesclerk. Mrs. Morgan is in the store, too.

Is there anything in Mrs. Morgan's hand? Yes, there is. There's a box in her hand. She has a box of tea in her hand. Does she have the box in her right hand? Yes, she does. She has it in her right hand.

Does she have anything in her left hand? No, she doesn't. She doesn't have anything in her left hand.

I	}	have
you		

he	}	has
she		
it		

we	}	have
they		

**Do you have a car?**

— Yes, I **do**.

— No, I **don't**.

(I **don't have** a car.)

**Does he have a car?**

— Yes, he **does**.

— No, he **doesn't**.

(He **doesn't have** a car.)

## QUESTIONS WITH *HAVE*

Mr. Morgan has a **car**.

— **What** does Mr. Morgan have?

Mrs. Duval has a **red** car.

— **What color** car does Mrs. Duval have?

I have an **Italian** car.

— **What kind of** car do I have?

Mr. Morgan has a car.

— **Who** has a car?

Mr. Morgan only has **one** cup of coffee.

— **How many** cups of coffee does Mr. Morgan have?

He has the cup of coffee **on his desk**.

— **Where** does he have the cup of coffee?

He only has a **little** coffee in the cup.

— **How much** coffee does he have in the cup?

**What color...?**  
*Какого цвета...?*

**What kind of ...?**  
*Какого типа...?*

**a little** — *немного*



### Exercise

*Example:* I have a **Japanese** car.

***What kind of car do you have?***

---

1. Mrs. Duval has a **cassette player**.

---

2. Miss López has **three** brothers.

---

3. The secretary has a **white** telephone.

---

4. Mr. Phillips has an **English** bicycle.

---

5. The store has a **lot of** coffee.

---

6. Mr. O'Connor has his car **in the garage**.

---

### Exercise

Задайте вопросы к выделенным словам и словосочетаниям. См. пример.

# Vocabulary **Six**

---

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 6.

<b>a little</b>	немного	<b>little</b>	см. <b>a little</b>
<b>a lot</b>		<b>lot</b>	см. <b>a lot</b>
<b>a lot of coffee</b>	много кофе		
<b>after</b>	после		
<b>the day after</b>	послезавтра	<b>Monday</b>	понедельник
<b>tomorrow</b>		<b>month</b>	месяц
<b>also</b>	также, тоже	<b>morning</b>	утро
		<b>much</b>	
<b>before</b>	до, перед	<b>How much does it cost?</b>	Сколько (это) стоит?
<b>calendar</b>	календарь		
<b>closed</b>	закрыт(а, о)	<b>on</b>	
<b>color</b>	цвет	<b>on the left/right</b>	слева/справа
		<b>on Saturday, Sunday, etc.</b>	в субботу, воскресенье и т.д.
<b>day</b>	день	<b>only</b>	только
<b>do</b>		<b>There's only a little.</b>	Только немного.
<b>Do you have...?</b>	У тебя/Вас/вас есть...?	<b>open</b>	открыт(а, о)
<b>does</b>			
<b>Does he have...?</b>	У него есть...?	<b>right</b>	правый
<b>during</b>	в течение	<b>right (hand)</b>	правая (рука)
		<b>on the right</b>	справа
<b>Friday</b>	пятница		
		<b>Saturday</b>	суббота
<b>hand</b>	рука	<b>Sunday</b>	воскресенье
<b>have (has)</b>	иметь		
<b>Do you have...?</b>	У тебя/Вас/вас есть...?	<b>Thursday</b>	четверг
<b>how much</b>		<b>today</b>	сегодня
<b>How much does it cost?</b>	Сколько (это) стоит?	<b>tomorrow</b>	завтра
		<b>Tuesday</b>	вторник
<b>left</b>	левый		
<b>left (hand)</b>	левая (рука)		
<b>on the left</b>	слева		

**was** *форма прошедшего времени глагола be*  
**Yesterday was Tuesday.** Вчера был вторник.  
**Wednesday** среда  
**week** неделя  
**weekend** выходные, уик-энд

**What day is today?** Какой сегодня день?  
**where** где, куда  
**Where's he going?** Куда он идёт?  
**yesterday** вчера

# Lesson **seven**

## VERBS IN THE PRESENT TENSES

В первой таблице показан способ образования форм настоящего длительного времени при помощи глагола **to be** и форм простого настоящего времени смыслового глагола. Во второй таблице приводится спряжение глаголов в простом настоящем времени.

Обратите внимание, что глаголы в простом настоящем времени спрягаются так же, как и глагол **have**.

### **he smokes** — он курит

Обратите внимание, что в третьем лице единственного числа глагол имеет окончание **-s** (глаголы **do** и **go** присоединяют окончание **-es**).

I'm	}	(not) smoking
you're		
he's		
she's		
we're		
they're		



I	}	<b>smoke</b>
you		<b>don't smoke</b>
he	}	<b>smokes</b>
she		<b>doesn't smoke</b>
we	}	<b>smoke</b>
they		<b>don't smoke</b>

drinking	drink (s)	standing	stands (s)	writing	write (s)
eating	eat (s)	speaking	speak (s)	looking	look (s)
coming	come (s)	listening	listen (s)	going	go (es)
sitting	sit (s)	reading	read (s)	doing	do (es)



## Exercise

### Exercise

В первой части упражнения вставьте в каждое предложение глагол, стоящий в скобках, в соответствующей форме. Во второй части напишите те же предложения ещё раз, теперь с глаголом в форме первого лица единственного числа. Обратите внимание на форму притяжательного местоимения.

### 1. What does Mr. Morgan do?

Example: He goes to the office at eight o'clock. (go)

- He \_\_\_\_\_ at his big desk. (sit)
- He \_\_\_\_\_ five cups of coffee a day. (drink)
- He doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ cigars, but he \_\_\_\_\_ cigarettes. (smoke)

### 2. And what about you?

Example: I go to the office at eight o'clock.

- I \_\_\_\_\_
- I \_\_\_\_\_
- I \_\_\_\_\_



## Exercise A

Examples: Janet reads newspapers at home. (*I*)

*I read newspapers at home, too.*

---

Mr. Morgan doesn't eat at the office. (*you*)

*You don't eat at the office, either.*

---

1. We don't drink wine. (*he*)

---

2. I listen to the radio. (*you*)

---

3. Miss Santos doesn't speak Japanese. (*I*)

---

4. Mr. Phillips smokes cigarettes. (*we*)

---



## Exercise B

Example: Does Bill speak English and French?

*He speaks English, but he doesn't speak French.*

---

1. Do you read newspapers and magazines?

I

---

2. Does Mrs. Schulz drink beer and wine?

She

---

3. Do I smoke cigarettes and cigars?

You

---

4. Does Mr. Morgan have a car and a truck?

He

---

### Exercise A

### Exercise B

Обратите внимание, что в утвердительных предложениях употребляется **too**, а в отрицательных — **either**.

Эти упражнения помогут Вам усвоить спряжение глаголов в простом настоящем времени в утвердительной и отрицательной формах.

truck — грузовик

## JANET GOES OUT ON SATURDAY EVENING

*Джанет идёт гулять субботним вечером*

Английское устойчивое словосочетание **go out** (букв.: *выходить из дома*) может иметь значение *выйти погулять, развлечься, провести время (в театре, на концерте и т.д.)*.

**go to a concert** — *идти на концерт*

**drive** — *ехать (в машине)*

Глагол **drive** имеет два близких по смыслу значения:

**Carlo is driving.** — *Карло ведёт машину.*

**They drive to Main street.** — *Они едут (в машине) на Мэйн-стрит.*

**car radio** — *радио(приёмник) в машине*

В английском языке словосочетание, обозначающее новое понятие, часто образуется с помощью двух существительных, первое из которых служит определением другого.

**go to the movies** — *идти в кино*

**usually** — *обычно*

**sometimes** — *иногда*

**ever** — *когда-либо, когда-нибудь*

(используется в вопросительных предложениях)

**never** — *никогда*

**always** — *всегда*

**relax** — *отдыхать*

**Janet is always asleep by ten o'clock.**

*Джанет всегда засыпает к десяти часам.*

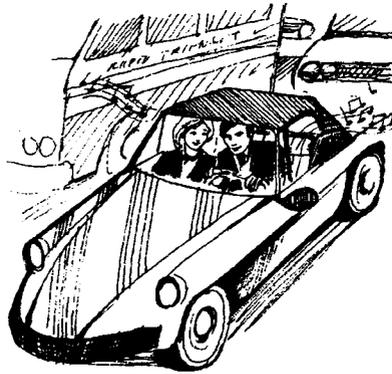
**go back** — *возвращаться*

**work** — *работать*

Наречия времени **usually, sometimes, ever, never, always** и т.д., используемые для обозначения привычных или повторяющихся действий, как правило, употребляются с глаголами в простом настоящем времени.

## JANET GOES OUT ON SATURDAY EVENING

### Recording



It's Saturday evening. Janet's going out. She's going to a concert with her friend Carlo Rossi Carlo's Italian. Look! They're in his car. Carlo is driving, and Janet is sitting next to him. They're listening to music on the car radio. Janet and Carlo are at the concert now.

Janet usually goes out on Saturday evening. Sometimes she goes to the movies and sometimes she goes to a concert. Does she ever go out on Sunday evening? No, she doesn't. On Sunday evening Janet never goes out. She always stays home and relaxes. Janet is always asleep by ten o'clock on Sunday evening. And, of course, on Monday she goes back to work!



### Action Questions

**Answer!**

Is Janet going to the movies this evening?

Where is she going?

She's going to a concert with Carlo, right?

Does Janet go to a concert every Saturday evening?

Sometimes she goes to the movies, right?

Does she go out or stay home on Sunday evening?



## Exercise A

*Example:* Janet gets home. She has dinner.

**When Janet gets home, she has dinner.**

---

1. Mr. Morgan gets to the office. He has a cup of coffee.

---

2. The children get home. They have a glass of milk.

---

3. The concert is over. The people go home.

---

4. I'm in Paris. I speak French.

---



## Exercise B

*Complete the following sentences.*

*Example:* The plane isn't **coming from** New York; it's **going to** New York.

1. In the morning Mrs. Morgan doesn't **go to bed**; she \_\_\_\_\_.

2. The secretary **gets to** the office at nine o'clock; she \_\_\_\_\_ at five.

3. On the weekend John doesn't get up **early**; he gets up \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Janet \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning; at night she **gets undressed**.

5. Bill doesn't have breakfast **before** he gets up; he has it \_\_\_\_\_ he gets up.

## Exercise A

Составьте одно предложение из двух приведённых в задании. Начните это предложение со слова **when**.

**get home** — *приехать домой*

**dinner** — *обед*

**get to** — *добраться, приехать*

## The concert is over.

*Концерт закончен.*

## Exercise B

Дополните предложения, употребляя антонимы к выделенным словам.

**go to bed** — *идти спать*

**get up** — *встать*

**early** — *рано*

**late** — *поздно*

**get dressed** — *одеваться*

**get undressed** — *раздеваться*

**have breakfast** — *завтракать*



## Exercise

**The Morgans never stay at home on Sunday.**

Обычно наречия времени ставятся между подлежащим и сказуемым.

Однако если в роли сказуемого выступает глагол **be**, такие наречия ставятся после него: **The Morgans are at home on Sunday.**

### Exercise

Дополните предложения наречиями времени, приведёнными в скобках. Обратите особое внимание на место этих наречий в предложении. См. пример.

The Morgans	are	<b>never</b> <b>sometimes</b> <b>usually</b> <b>always</b>	at home on Sunday.
<hr/>			
The Morgans		<b>never</b> <b>sometimes</b> <b>usually</b> <b>always</b>	stay at home on Sunday.

*Examples:* Janet goes to work by train. (*never*)

Janet **never** goes to work by train.

Mr. Morgan is at the office during the week. (*always*)

Mr. Morgan **is always** at the office during the week.

during — в течение, во время

1. Carlo drives a small car. (*always*)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. I eat dinner at that restaurant. (*sometimes*)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. The movie is over at nine o'clock. (*usually*)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Peter is in bed at ten o'clock. (*sometimes*)

\_\_\_\_\_

5. The dresses in this store are cheap. (*never*)

\_\_\_\_\_

dress — платье  
cheap — дешёвый



## Exercise

*Example:* Germans speak German.

**They speak German in Germany.**

---

1. Italians eat a lot of spaghetti.

---

2. Texans drive big cars.

---

3. Egyptians write from right to left.

---

4. Canadians speak two languages.

---

5. Americans watch a lot of television.

---

6. Russians drink a lot of vodka.

---

7. Cubans smoke big cigars.

---

8. Brazilians drink a lot of coffee.

---

Если местоимение **they** в английском предложении употребляется безотносительно к какому-либо определённому лицу, при переводе на русский язык оно обычно опускается:

**They speak German in Germany.**  
*В Германии говорят по-немецки.*

**spaghetti** — спагетти  
**a lot** — много

**Germans** — немцы

**Texans** — техасцы (жители штата Техас)

**Egyptians** — египтяне  
**from right to left** — справа налево

**Russians** — русские  
**vodka** — водка

# Vocabulary **seven**

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 7.

<b>after</b>	после	<b>few</b>	несколько
<b>again</b>	снова, ещё раз	<b>there are only a few</b>	там лишь несколько
<b>always</b>	всегда		
<b>asleep</b>	спит	<b>get</b>	
<b>be asleep</b>	заснуть	<b>get back</b>	возвращаться
<b>(not) at all</b>	совсем (нет)	<b>get dressed</b>	одеваться
		<b>get off</b>	сходить, спускаться, выходить
<b>back</b>		<b>get to</b>	добираться, прибывать
<b>go back</b>	возвращаться	<b>get undressed</b>	раздеваться
<b>bed</b>	кровать	<b>get up</b>	вставать
<b>go to bed</b>	ложиться спать		
<b>before</b>	перед	<b>go</b>	
<b>before she goes to bed</b>	перед тем, как лечь спать	<b>go back</b>	возвращаться
<b>breakfast</b>	завтрак	<b>go home</b>	возвращаться домой
<b>by</b>		<b>go out</b>	выходить, идти гулять
<b>by ten o'clock</b>	к десяти часам	<b>go to bed</b>	идти спать
		<b>go to the movies</b>	идти в кино
<b>car radio</b>	радио(приёмник) в машине		
<b>cheap</b>	дешёвый	<b>home</b>	
<b>concert</b>	концерт	<b>get home</b>	приезжать домой
		<b>go home</b>	возвращаться домой
<b>dress</b>	платье	<b>in</b>	
<b>dressed</b>		<b>in bed</b>	в кровати
<b>get dressed</b>	одеваться		
<b>drive</b>	ехать, вести машину	<b>language</b>	язык
		<b>late</b>	поздно
<b>early</b>	рано	<b>leave</b>	уходить, уезжать
<b>eat</b>	есть (пищу)		
<b>Egyptian</b>	египтянин, египтянка	<b>meat</b>	мясо
<b>evening</b>	вечер	<b>movies</b>	
<b>in the evening</b>	вечером	<b>go to the movies</b>	идти в кино
<b>ever</b>	когда-нибудь, когда-либо	<b>never</b>	никогда
		<b>over</b>	
		<b>When dinner is over...</b>	Когда обед закончен...

<b>relax</b>	отдыхать
<b>Russian</b>	русский, русская
<b>salad</b>	салат
<b>skirt</b>	юбка
<b>smoke</b>	курить
<b>sometimes</b>	иногда, время от времени
<b>speak</b>	говорить
<b>stay</b>	оставаться
<b>stay in bed</b>	оставаться в постели
<b>they</b>	они
<b>They speak Italian in Rome.</b>	В Риме говорят по-итальянски.

<b>tie</b>	галстук
<b>truck</b>	грузовик
<b>undressed</b>	
<b>get undressed</b>	раздеваться
<b>usually</b>	обычно
<b>vodka</b>	водка
<b>watch</b>	смотреть, наблюдать
<b>when</b>	когда
<b>work</b>	работать

# Lesson **eight**

**AN EVENING OUT WITH  
THE MORGANS**  
*Вечер (в городе) с Морганями*

## **AN EVENING OUT WITH THE MORGANS**

### **Recording**

**get into** – садиться в

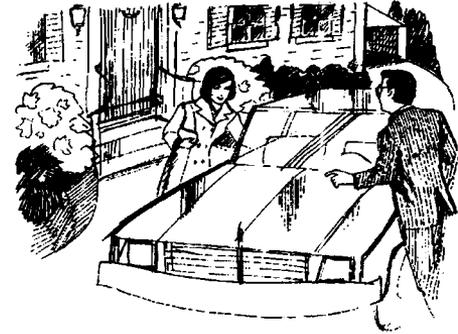
**this evening** – этим вечером

**often** – часто

**still** – ещё

**their house** – их дом

Mr. Morgan is standing next to his car. Look at Mrs. Morgan! She's getting into the car now. Are the Morgans going home? No, they're not. They're going out this evening. They're going to a restaurant. Mr. and Mrs. Morgan often go out on Saturday night. Are the Morgans at the restaurant now? No, they're not. They're still in front of their house.



**not anymore** – уже... не

**get out of** – выходить из

**Mr. Morgan is holding the door for her.**  
*Мистер Морган придерживает дверцу для неё.*



Are the Morgans still in front of their house now? No, they're not. They're not in front of their house anymore. They're in front of a restaurant. Mrs. Morgan is getting out of the car now. Mr. Morgan is holding the door for her.

### **Action Questions**

**Answer!**

Are the Morgans going out this evening?  
Do the Morgans often go out on Saturday evenings?  
Are they going to a concert?  
Where are they going?  
Is Mrs. Morgan getting out of the car now?  
Who's holding the door for her?

## AT THE RESTAURANT

### Recording

The Morgans are at their table now. Is Mr. Morgan sitting? No, he's not. He isn't sitting yet. What about Mrs. Morgan? Is she sitting yet? Yes, she is. She's already sitting.

After Mr. Morgan sits down, he calls the waiter and asks for the menu.

**Mr. Morgan:** Waiter! Menu, please!



Mr. and Mrs. Morgan are both sitting at their table now. Is there anyone else in the picture? Yes, there is. There's a waitress. What's she doing? She's putting knives, forks, and spoons on the table. The plates, cups, saucers, and napkins are already there.

Tony's coming to the table now. He has something in his hand. He's bringing it to the table. It's a menu. He's giving the menu to Mr. Morgan. Mr. Morgan is taking it from him.

**Tony:** Here you are, sir.

**Mr. Morgan:** Thank you. Hm..., let's see... What's good today? What do you recommend?

**Tony:** Well, veal is our specialty, and it's always excellent, but we also have some very nice chicken this evening.



## AT THE RESTAURANT

*В ресторане*

**He isn't sitting yet.**  
*Он ещё не занял своё место.*

**not yet** — ещё нет  
**... yet?** — ... уже...? (в вопросительных предложениях)  
**already** — уже  
**sit down** — садиться  
**call** — звать

**After Mr. Morgan sits down...**  
Ранее мы отмечали, что простое настоящее время, как правило, употребляется для обозначения привычных, повторяющихся действий: **Janet usually goes out on Saturday night; Janet works as a secretary** и т.д. Кроме того, простое настоящее время может обозначать и действие, которое происходит в данный момент: **After Mr. Morgan sits down, he calls the waiter.**

**menu** — меню  
**anyone else** — кто-нибудь ещё  
**waitress** — официантка

**She's putting knives, forks, and spoons on the table.**  
*Она кладёт ножи, вилки и ложки на стол.*  
**plate** — тарелка  
**saucer** — блюдце  
**napkin** — салфетка  
**come to** — подходить к

**He's giving the menu to Mr. Morgan.**  
*Он даёт меню мистеру Моргану.*  
**Mr. Morgan is taking it from him.**  
*Мистер Морган берёт его (меню) у него.*

**sir** — сэръ, господин (вежливое обращение)  
**Let's see...** — Посмотрим...  
**What's good today?**  
*Что у вас хорошего сегодня?*

**What do you recommend?**  
*Что Вы рекомендуете?*  
**Well, veal is our specialty.**  
*Вообще-то, телятина — наше фирменное блюдо.*  
**excellent** — отличный  
**chicken** — цыплёнок, курица

## ALREADY OR NOT YET?

Уже или ещё нет?

Обратите внимание на употребление **already** и **not yet**. **Already** (уже) используется в утвердительных предложениях: **She's already sitting.** **Not yet** (ещё нет) — в отрицательных: **He's not sitting yet.**

**Yet** может использоваться также в вопросительных предложениях, в таком случае оно переводится словом *уже*: **Is he sitting yet?** (Он уже сидит?)

### Exercise

Ответьте на вопросы, употребляя **already** и **not yet**. См. пример.

## ALREADY OR NOT YET?



### Recording

Does Mrs. Morgan have a napkin yet?

— *Yes, she does.*

She **already** has a napkin.

Does she have a knife yet?

— *No, she doesn't.*

She **doesn't** have a knife **yet**.



### Action Questions

**Answer!**

Are the Morgans at their table yet?

**Excuse me!**

They're already at their table or they aren't at their table yet?

Are they eating yet?

**Excuse me!**

They're already eating or they aren't eating yet?

Is the waiter bringing a menu to the table?

Is he giving the menu to Mrs. Morgan?

Who is he giving it to?



### Exercise

*Example:* It's 1:00 a.m. Is it after midnight yet?

*Yes, it is. It's already after midnight.*

1. The Morgans are looking at the menu. Are they at the restaurant yet?

---

2. John is driving to the airport. Is he on the plane yet?

---

3. Janet is sitting at her desk. Is she at the office yet?

---

4. Mary is on the bus. Is she home yet?

---

# HE'S SHOWING HER THE MENU

Tony's giving the menu to **Mr. Morgan.**  
He's giving **him** the menu.  
Mr. Morgan is showing the menu to **his wife.**  
He's showing **her** the menu.



## Exercise

Example: Janet is showing the letter to Mr. Morgan.

*She's showing **him** the letter.*

---

1. Mr. Morgan is giving a letter to Janet.

---

2. Mrs. Schulz is writing a postcard to Mary Anderson.

---

3. The waiter is bringing a bottle of wine to the Morgans.

---

4. John is showing his apartment to his sister.

---

5. The flight attendant is giving coffee and tea to the passengers.

---

## HE'S SHOWING HER THE MENU

*Он показывает ей меню*

В этом разделе впервые встречается косвенное дополнение, которое в английском языке может употребляться как с предлогом, так и без него. Обратите внимание на порядок слов в следующих предложениях:

Mr. Morgan is showing **the menu to his wife.**

Mr. Morgan is showing **his wife the menu.**

Оба предложения выражают одну и ту же мысль, однако логическое ударение в них падает на разные слова. Перевод этих предложений будет отличаться:

Mr. Morgan is showing **the menu** to his wife.

*Мистер Морган показывает своей жене **меню.***

Mr. Morgan is showing **his wife** the menu.

*Мистер Морган показывает меню **своей жене.***

### Exercise

Измените предложения, заменяя косвенное дополнение с предлогом **to** косвенным дополнением без предлога. См. пример.

**letter** — *письмо*

**bring** — *нести, приносить*

**apartment** — *квартира*

## FORMATION OF QUESTIONS

Образование специальных вопросов

**Who's Mr. Duval showing the French book to?**

*Кому мистер Дюваль показывает французскую книгу?*

Как Вы помните, в разговорной речи в английском языке предлог часто ставится в конец предложения.

В отличие от этого, на письме и в литературной речи предлог употребляется перед вопросительным местоимением (в данном случае **to whom**):

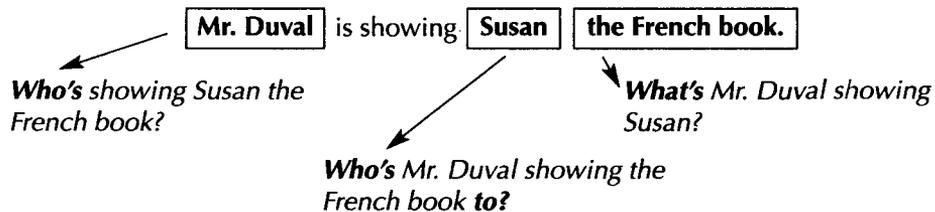
**To whom is Mr. Duval showing the French book?**

*Кому мистер Дюваль показывает французскую книгу?*

### Exercise

Задайте вопросы к выделенным словам.

## FORMATION OF QUESTIONS



### Exercise

Examples: Mrs. Morgan is showing her husband **the dress**.

**What's she showing her husband?**

---

Janet is giving **Mr. Morgan** the letter.

**Who's she giving the letter to?**

---

1. Mary is giving the salesclerk **the money**.

---

2. Mr. Morgan is writing **Mr. Phillips** a letter.

---

3. **Bill** is bringing Mary some coffee.

---

4. **You're** writing your mother a postcard.

---

5. Alice is giving her brother **a book**.

---

## WAITING FOR DINNER

The Morgans are waiting for their dinner. The restaurant is very crowded this evening. Some of the people are waiters, and some of them are waitresses. But most of them are customers.

Look at the table on the right. How many people are there at that table? There are four. How many of them are men? All of them are men. Are any of the men smoking? Yes, two of them are. One of them is smoking a cigar, and one of them is smoking a cigarette. None of them are smoking a pipe.



Now look at this table. The man at this table is drinking wine. Is the woman drinking wine, too? Yes, she is. Both of them are drinking wine. Look at the bottle! Is all of the wine in the bottle? No, it's not. Some of the wine is in the man's glass, and some of it is in the woman's glass. But most of the wine is still in the bottle.

Tony's back at the Morgans' table now. He has a plate in his hand. He's putting it in front of Mr. Morgan. Mrs. Morgan's plate is already in front of her. She's picking up her napkin now.

**Tony:** Is there anything else, sir?

**Mr. Morgan:** No, thank you. That's all for now.

**Tony:** Enjoy your meal!

**Mr. Morgan:** Thank you very much.



## WAITING FOR DINNER

*В ожидании обеда*

Отметьте, что дополнение присоединяется к глаголу **wait** (*ждать*) при помощи предлога **for**.

**crowded** — *переполненный*

**Some of the people are waiters.**  
*Некоторые из этих людей — официанты.*

**most of them** — *большинство из них*

**all of them** — *все, каждый из них*

**none of them** — *никто из них*

**both of them** — *оба они*

**some of it** — *немного*

**pipe** — *трубка*

Обратите внимание, что **some**, **most** и **all** употребляются с существительными как в единственном числе (неисчисляемые существительные), так и во множественном числе (исчисляемые существительные):

**Some of the wine is in the bottle.**

*В бутылке есть немного вина.*

**Some of the people are waiters.**

*Некоторые из этих людей — официанты.*

**Tony's back...** — *Тони вернулся...*

**the Morgans' table**

*столык Морганов*

Как Вы уже знаете, для того, чтобы выразить принадлежность предмета, к существительному, обозначающему того, кому принадлежит данный предмет, прибавляется 's: **the Morgans' desk** (*столык Морганов*).

**pick up** — *поднимать*

**Is there anything else?**

*Желаете ещё чего-нибудь?*

**That's all for now.**

*Пока что всё.*

**Enjoy your meal!**

*Приятного аппетита!*

**meal** — *еда*

**Thank you very much.**

*Большое спасибо.*

Обратите внимание, что с неисчисляемыми существительными (**wine**) неопределённые местоимения **some**, **most**, **all** и др. употребляются в единственном числе, а с исчисляемыми существительными (**people**) — во множественном числе.

**Some of the wine is in the bottle.**

*В бутылке есть немного вина.*

**Some of the people are waiters.**

*Некоторые из этих людей — официанты.*

### Exercise

**Refer to the pictures on page 87.**

Дополните предложения подходящими по смыслу словами. См. иллюстрации на стр. 87.



## Exercise

**Are any of these people American?**

— Yes, **one** of them is.

— Yes, **some**  
**both**  
**a few** of them are.  
**many**  
**most**  
**all**

— No, **none** of them are.

**Is any of this wine American?**

— Yes, **some**  
**most** of it is.  
**all**

— No, **none** of it is.

*Fill in the blanks with a, b, or c.  
(Refer to the pictures on page 87.)*

- \_\_\_\_\_ of the customers are standing.  
a. some    b. none    c. a few
- \_\_\_\_\_ of the customers are sitting.  
a. all    b. one    c. any
- \_\_\_\_\_ of the people are drinking wine.  
a. one    b. most    c. two
- \_\_\_\_\_ of the customers is smoking a cigar.  
a. most    b. one    c. all
- \_\_\_\_\_ of the people are men.  
a. some    b. both    c. all



## Exercise

Example: Mrs. Morgan: "John, please close the window."

*Mrs. Morgan is asking John to close the window.*

---

1. Miss Santos: "José, please sit down."

---

2. Mr. Morgan: "Please come into my office, Janet."

---

3. Mrs. Morgan: "Peter, please put down the matches."

---

4. Susan: "Please hold the door for me, John."

---

5. Carlo: "Janet, please wait for me after work."

---

6. Mr. Duval: "Marie, please put the letter on my desk."

---

7. Mr. Morgan: "Mary, please bring me the newspaper."

---

8. Mary: "Peter, please give me the pen."

---

## Exercise

Составьте предложения, употребляя выражение **ask... to**. Не забудьте произвести необходимые замены личных и притяжательных местоимений.



## Exercise

Fill in the correct preposition.

Example: In a restaurant we ask the waiter for a table.

**follow** – следовать

1. The waiter asks us \_\_\_\_\_ follow him.
2. Then we sit down \_\_\_\_\_ our table.
3. We call the waiter and ask him \_\_\_\_\_ a menu.
4. When he brings it, we take it \_\_\_\_\_ him.
5. He asks us what we would like to have \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.
6. After the waiter takes our order, we wait \_\_\_\_\_ our meal.
7. After 10 minutes, the waiter brings our dinner \_\_\_\_\_ the table.
8. My wife and I usually drink wine \_\_\_\_\_ our dinner.
9. We usually eat \_\_\_\_\_ 8 o'clock.
10. I take my coffee \_\_\_\_\_ sugar.

**dinner** – обед

В западной Европе и США обычно обедают вечером, а обед в середине рабочего дня называется **lunch** (ланч).



## Exercise A

Please **come** on Tuesday!  
Please **don't come** on Monday!

*Example:* Please open the door! (*window*)

*Please don't open the window!*

1. Please bring me wine! (*water*)

Please \_\_\_\_\_ !

2. Please speak English! (*Spanish*)

Please \_\_\_\_\_ !

3. Please go by train! (*bus*)

Please \_\_\_\_\_ !

4. Please leave tomorrow! (*today*)

Please \_\_\_\_\_ !



## Exercise B

*Example:* I have a newspaper. (*magazine*)

*I don't have a magazine.*

1. The Duvals live in Paris. (*New York*)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The skirt costs \$20. (*\$30*)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. They speak Japanese in Tokyo. (*Spanish*)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Janet works as a secretary. (*waitress*)

\_\_\_\_\_

## Exercise A Exercise B

Поставьте предложения  
в отрицательную форму. См. пример.

**don't come** — *не приходите*  
Мы уже знакомы с утвердительной  
формой глаголов в повелительном  
наклонении (раздел 8): **Please come on  
Tuesday!**

Отрицательная форма глаголов  
в повелительном наклонении образуется  
при помощи **don't** перед смысловым  
глаголом: **Please don't come on Monday!**

Не забудьте, что форма повелительного  
наклонения глаголов одинакова  
для единственного и множественного  
чисел, поскольку в английском языке  
существует только одно местоимение  
2-го лица (**you**).

live — *жить*

skirt — *юбка*  
cost — *стоить*



## Exercise A

Example: Please open the door! (*window*)

Please don't open the window!

1. Please bring me wine! (*water*)

Please \_\_\_\_\_ !

2. Please speak English! (*Spanish*)

Please \_\_\_\_\_ !

3. Please go by train! (*bus*)

Please \_\_\_\_\_ !

4. Please leave tomorrow! (*today*)

Please \_\_\_\_\_ !



## Exercise B

Example: I have a newspaper. (*magazine*)

I don't have a magazine.

1. The Duvals live in Paris. (*New York*)

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The skirt costs \$20. (*\$30*)

\_\_\_\_\_

3. They speak Japanese in Tokyo. (*Spanish*)

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Janet works as a secretary. (*waitress*)

\_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise A Exercise B

Поставьте предложения  
в отрицательную форму. См. пример.

**don't come** – *не приходите*  
Мы уже знакомы с утвердительной  
формой глаголов в повелительном  
наклонении (раздел 8): **Please come on  
Tuesday!**

Отрицательная форма глаголов  
в повелительном наклонении образуется  
при помощи **don't** перед смысловым  
глаголом: **Please don't come on Monday!**

Не забудьте, что форма повелительного  
наклонения глаголов одинакова  
для единственного и множественного  
чисел, поскольку в английском языке  
существует только одно местоимение  
2-го лица (**you**).

**live** – *жить*

**skirt** – *юбка*  
**cost** – *стоить*

## Exercise

Выполняя это упражнение, Вы повторите употребление косвенного дополнения. Кроме того, впервые нужно будет употребить одновременно три личных местоимения, выполняющих функции:

- подлежащего;
- прямого дополнения;
- косвенного дополнения (с предлогом *to*).

См. пример.

## WHAT'S JANET DOING?



She's giving him **the letter**.

She's giving **it** to him.



## Exercise

*Example:* The waiter is showing Mrs. Morgan the menu.

*He's showing it to her.*

---

1. Mrs. Duval is showing her son the bicycle.

---

2. Miss López is giving her sister the radio.

---

3. The secretaries are bringing Miss Brown the letters.

---

4. Mr. Morgan is giving his wife the picture.

---

5. Tony Mellini is bringing the customers menus.

---

6. The salesclerk is showing Mr. Morgan the tie.

---

# Vocabulary **eight**

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 8.

<b>all of them</b>	все, каждый из них	<b>there are only a few</b>	там лишь несколько
<b>already</b>	уже	<b>for</b>	
<b>anymore</b>		<b>for now</b>	пока что
<b>not anymore</b>	уже... не	<b>fork</b>	вилка
<b>anyone</b>		<b>get</b>	
<b>anyone else</b>	кто-нибудь ещё	<b>get out of</b>	выходить из
<b>anything</b>		<b>get into</b>	садиться в
<b>anything else</b>	что-нибудь ещё	<b>give</b>	
<b>apartment</b>	квартира	<b>give to</b>	давать (кому-либо)
<b>ask</b>		<b>Here you are!</b>	Вот, пожалуйста!
<b>ask for</b>	просить	<b>hold</b>	
<b>ask someone to</b>	просить кого-либо (о чём-нибудь)	<b>Mr. Morgan is holding the door for her.</b>	Мистер Морган придерживает дверцу для неё.
<b>both of them</b>	оба	<b>house</b>	дом
<b>bring</b>	нести, приносить	<b>jacket</b>	пиджак
<b>call</b>	звать, звонить	<b>knife (knives)</b>	нож (ножи)
<b>chicken</b>	цыплёнок, курица	<b>language</b>	язык
<b>crowded</b>		<b>later</b>	
<b>is crowded</b>	переполнен	<b>a few minutes later</b>	через несколько минут
<b>dinner</b>	ужин	<b>letter</b>	письмо
<b>doing</b>		<b>meal</b>	еда
<b>what's she doing?</b>	Что она делает?	<b>menu</b>	меню
<b>else</b>		<b>most of them</b>	большинство из них
<b>anything else</b>	что-нибудь ещё	<b>napkin</b>	салфетка
<b>Enjoy your meal!</b>	Приятного аппетита!	<b>none of them</b>	никто из них
<b>evening</b>		<b>often</b>	часто
<b>this evening</b>	этим вечером		
<b>evening out</b>	вечер (в городе)		
<b>excellent</b>	отличный		
<b>few</b>			
<b>a few minutes later</b>	через несколько минут		

<b>order</b>	заказывать	<b>take out (of)</b>	вынимать (из)
<b>pen</b>	(авто)ручка	<b>talk to</b>	разговаривать (с кем-либо)
<b>pick up</b>	поднимать, брать	<b>that's all</b>	это всё
<b>pipe</b>	трубка	<b>their house</b>	их дом
<b>plate</b>	тарелка	<b>this evening</b>	этим вечером
<b>recommend</b>		<b>tie</b>	галстук
<b>What do you recommend?</b>	Что Вы рекомендуете?	<b>until</b>	до (о времени)
<b>saucer</b>	блюдец	<b>veal</b>	телятина
<b>show</b>	показывать	<b>very much</b>	очень
<b>sir</b>	сэр	<b>Thank you very much.</b>	Большое спасибо.
<b>sit down</b>	садиться	<b>wait for</b>	ждать
<b>skirt</b>	юбка	<b>waitress</b>	официантка
<b>some of it</b>	немного	<b>Well...</b>	Ну,.../Вообще-то,...
<b>specialty</b>	специально	<b>What's good today?</b>	Что у вас хорошего сегодня?
<b>spoon</b>	ложка	<b>yet</b>	ещё, уже
<b>still</b>	всё ещё	<b>not yet</b>	(в вопросительных предложениях) ещё нет
<b>take</b>			
<b>take from ...</b>	брать (у кого-либо)		

## REVIEW TEST

Place an **X** in the correct box.

1. It's 5:10.  
 a. It's ten past five.  
 b. It's ten to five.  
 c. It's five to ten.
2. We're going out **at 7:30**.  
 a. What time are you going out?  
 b. Where are you going at 7:30?  
 c. Who's going out at 7:30?
3. Mr. Morgan is going to Chicago \_\_\_\_\_ train.  
 a. with  
 b. by  
 c. on
4. Mrs. Turner is speaking to \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. us  
 b. we  
 c. both us
5. The flight attendant is speaking to the passengers.  
 a. They're listening to her.  
 b. They listening to her.  
 c. They're listening her.
6. Today is Monday. Saturday \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. was the day before yesterday  
 b. is the day after tomorrow  
 c. is two days from today
7. There's a lot of milk in the bottle, but \_\_\_\_\_ in the glass.  
 a. there isn't much  
 b. there aren't many  
 c. there's only a few
8. Do you have a small office?  
 a. Yes, I do.  
 b. Yes, I have.  
 c. Yes, it is.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Morgan have a car?  
 a. Do  
 b. is  
 c. Does
10. Does Mrs. Morgan have her food yet?  
— Yes, she does. She \_\_\_\_\_.  
 a. has her food yet  
 b. already has her food  
 c. has her food anymore
11. Janet \_\_\_\_\_ to work at nine o'clock.  
 a. gets to usually  
 b. usually gets  
 c. gets usually
12. Mr. Morgan \_\_\_\_\_ German when he's in Germany.  
 a. speaks

### Review Test 2

Предлагаем выполнить вторую контрольную работу. Напоминаем, что если в процессе выполнения работы Вы сделаете более пяти ошибок, следует тщательно повторить разделы 4–8, прежде чем переходить к следующим урокам.

- b. is speaking  
 c. speak
13. Mr. Turner smokes, but he \_\_\_\_\_ cigars.  
 a. isn't smoking  
 b. doesn't smoke  
 c. don't smoke
14. Tony's giving me the menu.  
 a. He's giving me the menu.  
 b. He's me giving the menu.  
 c. He's giving to me the menu.
15. We often watch television **in the evening**.  
 a. When do we watch television?  
 b. What do we watch in the evening?  
 c. What do we do in the evening?
16. A tie costs \_\_\_\_\_ than a jacket.  
 a. less  
 b. more  
 c. cheaper
17. **Janet** is bringing Mr. Morgan the letter.  
 a. Who's she bringing the letter to?  
 b. What's she bringing to Mr. Morgan?  
 c. Who's bringing Mr. Morgan the letter?
18. I sleep \_\_\_\_\_ 7 o'clock on Monday.  
 a. to  
 b. until  
 c. during
19. There are 20 men and 2 women in the office.  
 a. Most of the people are men.  
 b. Both of the people are women.  
 c. A few of the people are men.
20. Mr. Phillips is asking his son to open the window:  
 a. "Please open you the window."  
 b. "Please to open the window."  
 c. "Please open the window."

# Lesson **nine**

## MR. MORGAN WAS AWAY LAST WEEK

### Recording

Today is Monday. Mr. Morgan is at the office today. Yesterday was Sunday. Was Mr. Morgan at the office yesterday? No, he wasn't. He was at home yesterday. What about Mrs. Morgan? Was she at the office yesterday? No, she wasn't. She wasn't at the office. She was at home with Mr. Morgan. The Morgans were at home together yesterday. Were they at your home? No, they weren't. They were at their home. Were they there all day? Yes, they were.



Listen! Mr. Morgan is on the phone with Bill O'Brien. Bill works at the Chicago office of Mr. Morgan's company.

**Bill:** Hello, John! Say, you weren't at the office on Friday. Were you sick?

**Mr. Morgan:** No, I wasn't. I was out of the country. I was in France — in Paris.

**Bill:** Oh, I see. Were you on vacation?

**Mr. Morgan:** No, I wasn't. I was there on business.

**Bill:** Were you there alone?

**Mr. Morgan:** No, my wife was with me.

**Bill:** How long were you away?

**Mr. Morgan:** We were away for ten days.

### Action Questions

**Answer!**

Is today Monday?

Was yesterday Sunday?

Is Mr. Morgan at the office today?

Was he at the office yesterday?

Was he at the office or at home?

Were Mr. and Mrs. Morgan out of the country last week?

Were they in Germany?

**Where were they?**

### MR. MORGAN WAS AWAY LAST WEEK

*Мистер Морган отсутствовал на прошлой неделе*

**Was Mr. Morgan at the office yesterday?**

— No, he wasn't.

*Мистер Морган был вчера в офисе?*

— Нет. (Нет, его не было.)

**The Morgans were at home together yesterday.**

*Вчера Морганьы были дома вместе.*

**No they weren't.**

*Нет. (Нет, они не были.)*

**all day — весь день**

**Yes, they were. — Да. (Да, они были.)**

Обратите внимание на употребление простого прошедшего времени (**was/wasn't, were/weren't**), которое обозначает действие, происходившее в прошлом, и соответствует русскому прошедшему времени.

Глагол **be** в прошедшем времени имеет форму **was** в единственном числе (**I, he, she, it**) и **were** — во множественном числе (**we, they**). Во втором лице вместе с **were** всегда употребляется местоимение **you**, которое может обозначать как единственное (*ты*), так и множественное число (*вы*).

В разговорном английском языке **was not** и **were not** употребляются в сокращённой форме: **wasn't** и **weren't**.

**Say,...** — Скажите,...

**sick** — болен, больна

**No, I wasn't.** — Нет. (Нет, я не был.)

**I was out of the country.**

*Я был за границей.*

**Oh, I see...** — А, понятно...

**Were you on vacation?**

*Вы были в отпуске?*

**on business** — по делам

**alone** — один, одна

**How long were you away?**

— **We were away for ten days.**

*Сколько времени вас не было?*

*(Букв.: Как долго вас не было?)*

— *Нас не было десять дней.*



## Exercise

1. Was Mr. Morgan at the office on Sunday?

---

2. Where was he?

---

3. Who was he with?

---

4. Were the Morgans at your home or at their home?

---

5. Were they there all day?

---

6. Where does Bill O'Brien work?

---

7. Was Mr. Morgan sick on Friday?

---

8. Was he sick or was he out of the country?

---

9. What city was he in?

---

10. Was he there on vacation or on business?

---

11. Was Mr. Morgan in Paris for three weeks?

---

12. How long was he there?

---



## Exercise

*Example:* Mr. Phillips was in Berlin on Wednesday, Thursday and Friday.

*He was in Berlin for three days.*

---

1. The plane was at the airport from 2:00 until 4:00.  

---
2. Bill was on the phone from 4:00 until 4:15.  

---
3. I was at the office from 9:00 a.m. until 5:00 p.m.  

---
4. The bank was closed on Saturday and Sunday.  

---
5. The customers were at the restaurant from 6:00 until 8:00.  

---
6. Mr. Duval was in New York from Wednesday till Sunday.  

---
7. The bank was open from 9:00 until 3:00.  

---
8. Susan was at the store from 9:05 till 9:30.  

---
9. We were out of the country Monday through Wednesday.  

---
10. I was at home on Sunday and Monday.  

---

## Exercise

Составьте предложения, указывая длительность действия (**for three days, for two hours**). См. пример.

**bank** – банк

**Monday through Wednesday** – с понедельника до среды

## MR. MORGAN WAS VERY BUSY LAST WEEK

Мистер Морган был очень занят на прошлой неделе

Обратите внимание на отсутствие предлога перед словосочетанием **last week**.

**hotel** — гостиница  
**most of the time** — большую часть времени  
**meeting** — собрание, совещание

**all day every day**  
целый день ежедневно

Запомните выражения **all day** (целый день) и **every day** (ежедневно), в которых **all** и **every** могут не переводиться буквально. Во втором выражении существительное **day** стоит в единственном числе.

**long** — длинный

**tourist** — турист  
**businessmen** — коммерсант, бизнесмен  
**traffic** — уличное движение

В таблице приведены утвердительная, отрицательная и вопросительная формы глагола **be** в простом настоящем и простом прошедшем временах.

## MR. MORGAN WAS VERY BUSY LAST WEEK

### Recording



Mr. Morgan was very busy in Paris. He wasn't at the hotel during the day. Most of the time during the day he was at the office. There were meetings all day every day, and the meetings were long!

There were a lot of people in Paris — a lot of tourists and a lot of businessmen. And there was a lot of traffic. Paris was very crowded and very busy last week. Paris is always crowded and busy!



#### Today...

I	am (not)
he	
she	is(n't)
it	
there	
we	
you	are(n't)
they	
there	

#### Yesterday...

I	was(n't)
he	
she	was(n't)
it	
there	
we	
you	were(n't)
they	
there	

Was he in Paris?  
— Yes, he was.  
— No, he wasn't.

Were you at home?  
— Yes, I was.  
— No, I wasn't.

Was I here?  
— Yes, you were.  
— No, you weren't.

# Action Questions

**Answer!**

Was Mr. Morgan busy in Paris?  
Was he at the hotel during the day?  
Where was he, at the hotel or at the office?  
Were there a lot of meetings in Paris?  
Were the meetings long?  
And what about the traffic — was there a lot of traffic or  
only a little?  
Were there a lot of tourists or only a few?



## Exercise

1. Was Mr. Morgan at the hotel during the day?

---

2. Where was he most of the time during the day?

---

3. Were there meetings all day or only in the morning?

---

4. Were they long?

---

5. Were there a lot of people in Paris last week?

---

6. Were there a lot of tourists in Paris or only a few?

---

7. Was there a lot of traffic, too?

---

### Exercise A

Поставьте глаголы в предложениях в простое прошедшее время. См. пример.



## Exercise A

*Example:* I'm at home today.

Yesterday I was at work.

1. Today **is** Monday.

Yesterday \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.

2. **Are** you at home now?

\_\_\_\_\_ you at home this morning?

3. Janet **isn't** here today.

She \_\_\_\_\_ here yesterday, either.

4. We're at the office now.

At noon we \_\_\_\_\_ in a restaurant.

5. **Is** Mr. Morgan in New York today?

\_\_\_\_\_ he in Paris on Friday?

### Exercise B

Rewrite the following story in the past tense.

Перепишите приведённый текст, употребляя глаголы в простом прошедшем времени. См. пример.



## Exercise B

*Rewrite the following story in the past tense.*

Today Mr. Morgan isn't at home.

Yesterday Mr. Morgan wasn't at

He isn't at the office, either.

home. He

Where is he? He's in Paris.

He's there on business. Paris

is very crowded during the day.

There's a lot of traffic, and there are

a lot of people. Mr. Morgan is very

busy. He's at the office all day.

There are meetings all day.

# MR. MORGAN WORKED HARD LAST WEEK

## Recording

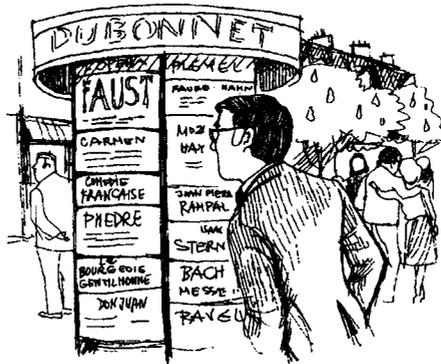
Mr. Morgan always works hard. He worked hard when he was in Paris, too. But he didn't work in the evening — he only worked during the day. He was free in the evening. After work he liked to relax. He often walked slowly back to his hotel and enjoyed the sights and sounds of the city.



## Action Questions

**Answer!**

- Does Mr. Morgan always work hard?
- Did he work hard last week?
- Did he work in the evening?
- Did he work in the evening or during the day?
- Did Mrs. Morgan work in Paris, too?
- What did she do in Paris? Did she stay at her hotel or did she walk around the city?
- She looked at the beautiful things in the shop windows, right?
- Did she learn any French in Paris?



Did Mrs. Morgan work in Paris, too?  
No, she didn't. What did she do? She walked around the city, visited museums and looked at the beautiful things in the shop windows. She learned a lot about Paris. Did she learn any French in Paris? Of course she did!

# MR. MORGAN WORKED HARD LAST WEEK

*Мистер Морган много работал на прошлой неделе  
(Букв.: усердно работал)*

**he didn't work** — он не работал  
**He was free...** — Он был свободен...

Мы уже отмечали, что в простом прошедшем времени глагол **be** имеет форму **was/were**:

**Yesterday was Tuesday.**

*Вчера был вторник.*

**Yesterday the Morgans were at home.**

*Вчера Морганы были дома.*

В английском языке простое прошедшее время может обозначать:

а) действие обычное или повторявшееся в прошлом:

**Most of the time Mr. Morgan was at the office.**

*Большую часть времени мистер Морган был в офисе (на работе).*

**He often walked to his hotel.**

*Он часто ходил пешком к себе в гостиницу.*

б) иногда простое прошедшее время обозначает действие, законченное в прошлом:

**Did he work hard last week?**

*Он много работал на прошлой неделе?*

**liked to** — любил, нравилось

**walked back** — возвращался пешком

**slowly** — медленно, спокойно

**enjoyed** — очень нравилось, наслаждался

**sights and sounds** — атмосфера и звуки

**Did Mrs. Morgan work?**

— No, she didn't.

*Миссис Морган работала?*

— Нет.

**walked around** — гулял(а)

**visited** — посетил(а)

**museum** — музей

**beautiful** — красивый, прекрасный

**things** — вещи

**shop window** — витрина

**learned** — выучил(а)

**about** — о (об)

## DID HE WORK YESTERDAY?

В начале этого раздела мы изучали формы простого прошедшего времени глагола **be**: **was/were**. Теперь обратимся к формам прошедшего времени других глаголов.

Большинство английских глаголов имеет правильную форму простого прошедшего времени, которая образуется путём добавления окончания **-ed** к форме инфинитива (неопределённая форма) глагола: **he worked**.

Однако так образуется только утвердительная форма простого прошедшего времени правильных глаголов. Отрицательная и вопросительная формы, а также неполный ответ образуются при помощи вспомогательного глагола **did**: **Yes, he did**.

Утвердительная форма:

**He worked.**

Отрицательная форма:

**He didn't work.**

Вопросительная форма:

**Did he work?**

Форма краткого ответа:

**Yes, he did.**

**No, he didn't.**

Обратите внимание на отсутствие окончания **-ed** в отрицательной и вопросительной формах.

### Today...

I	
you	<i>work</i>
we	<i>don't work</i>
they	
he	<i>works</i>
she	<i>doesn't work</i>

### Yesterday...

I	
you	
we	<i>worked</i>
they	<i>didn't work</i>
he	
she	

He worked...

**Did he work...?**

— *Yes, he **did**.*

— *No, he **didn't**.*

I worked...

**Did you work...?**

— *Yes, I **did**.*

— *No, I **didn't**.*



## Exercise

1. Does Mr. Morgan always work hard?

---

2. Did he work hard in Paris, too?

---

3. When did he work, in the evening or during the day?

---

4. And when did he like to relax?

---

5. What did Mrs. Morgan do during the day?

---



## Exercise A

*Example:* Linda walks home every night.

Last night *she walked home.*

---

1. Bill usually waits at the bus stop for ten minutes.

Yesterday \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Mr. Tanaka works for a Japanese company.

Last year \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Mr. Turner is in New York this week.

Last week \_\_\_\_\_.

4. I watch television every day.

Yesterday \_\_\_\_\_.



## Exercise B

*Example:* Did Mr. Morgan work on Monday and Sunday?

*He worked on Monday, but he didn't work on Sunday.*

---

1. Did the Morgans visit Paris and Marseilles?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Did Mrs. Morgan learn French and Spanish?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Did Mr. Morgan work at the office and at the hotel?

\_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise A

Дополните предложения, употребляя глагол в простом прошедшем времени.

### Exercise B

Это упражнение поможет Вам научиться употреблять глаголы в утвердительной и отрицательной формах простого прошедшего времени.

## AT THE THEATER

*В театре*

went — *ходили*

**They had two tickets for the eight o'clock performance.**

*У них было два билета на представление в восемь часов.*

took a taxi — *взяли такси*

got to — *приехали*

theater — *театр*

play — *спектакль, пьеса*

begin/began — *начинаться/начался*

**The play lasted about two hours.**

*Спектакль продолжался около двух часов.*

ended — *окончился*

sat — *сели*

ate — *съели*

brought — *принёс*

drank — *пили*

delicious — *очень вкусный*

**regular verbs**

*правильные глаголы*

**irregular verbs**

*неправильные глаголы*

Мы уже научились образовывать простое прошедшее время правильных английских глаголов (большинство глаголов в английском языке принадлежит именно к их числу).

Некоторые глаголы в английском языке являются неправильными (т.е. имеют особую форму спряжения). Их следует знать, так как неправильные глаголы наиболее часто встречаются в разговорной речи. Следует выучить грамматические формы каждого такого глагола, так как они не подчиняются общим правилам образования.

## AT THE THEATER

### Recording

Mr. Morgan always goes to the theater when he's in Paris. Last week he and Mrs. Morgan went to the theater on Wednesday evening. They had two tickets for the eight o'clock performance. The Morgans took a taxi from their hotel and got to the theater about fifteen minutes later. The play began at eight o'clock. It was excellent, and the Morgans enjoyed it very much.

The play lasted about two hours. When it ended, the Morgans went to a restaurant. They sat at a small table in the corner and ate a delicious meal. The waiter also brought them a small bottle of wine. (They drank French wine, of course!)



#### Regular Verbs

answer(s)	answered
arrive(s)	arrived
ask(s)	asked
call(s)	called
close(s)	closed
end(s)	ended
enjoy(s)	enjoyed
follow(s)	followed
learn(s)	learned
like(s)	liked
live(s)	lived
look(s)	looked
order(s)	ordered
pour(s)	poured
recommend(s)	recommended
show(s)	showed
sign(s)	signed
smoke(s)	smoked
stay(s)	stayed
talk(s)	talked
wait(s)	waited
walk(s)	walked
watch(es)	watched
work(s)	worked

#### Irregular Verbs

begin(s)	began
bring(s)	brought
come(s)	came
cost(s)	cost
do(es)	did
drink(s)	drank
drive(s)	drove
eat(s)	ate
get(s)	got
give(s)	gave
go(es)	went
have/has	had
hold(s)	held
know(s)	knew
leave(s)	left
put(s)	put
read(s)	read
see(s)	saw
sit(s)	sat
sleep(s)	slept
speak(s)	spoke
stand(s)	stood
take(s)	took
write(s)	wrote

# Action Questions

**Answer!**

Did the Morgans go to the theater last week?  
Did they go on Monday evening or on Wednesday evening?  
Did they get to the theater by bus?  
How did they get to the theater?  
Did the play begin at seven o'clock?  
What time did the play begin?  
Did the Morgans enjoy the play?  
They enjoyed it very much, right?  
Where did they go after the play?



## Exercise

Fill in the past tense of the verbs in parentheses.

Example: Last week Mr. Morgan **went** to Paris. (*go*)

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ an excellent movie last night. (*see*)
2. The plane \_\_\_\_\_ at the airport for an hour. (*be*)
3. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ television after dinner. (*watch*)
4. The flight attendant \_\_\_\_\_ to the passengers. (*speak*)
5. The waiter \_\_\_\_\_ the wine to the table. (*bring*)
6. Janet \_\_\_\_\_ the letters on the desk. (*put*)
7. The students \_\_\_\_\_ to their teacher. (*listen*)
8. Mr. Harris \_\_\_\_\_ to my home last week. (*come*)

## Exercise

Дополните предложения приведёнными в скобках глаголами в простом прошедшем времени.

## TWO DAYS AGO

Как и в русском языке, наречие **ago** ставится после слов, обозначающих время:

**We got here two days ago.**

*Мы приехали сюда два дня тому назад.*

## WE GOT HERE TWO DAYS AGO

When did you get here?

— We got here      two days  
                         ten minutes  
                         three hours  
                         six weeks      **ago.**  
                         a long time  
                         a little while  
                         a few minutes



### Exercise

#### Exercise

Составьте предложения с наречием **ago**.  
См. пример.

*Example:* It's 5:00 now. I got here at 3:00.

*I got here **two hours ago.***

1. Today is Saturday. I saw Bill on Wednesday.

2. It's 2:05 now. The train left at 2:00.

3. It's 5:20. The bank closed at 5:00.

4. It's 3:30. You had lunch at noon.

5. Mrs. Morgan went to a museum the day before yesterday.

6. It's 6:50 now. We got home at 6:00.

# Vocabulary **nine**

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 9.

<b>ago</b>		<b>every</b>	
<b>two days ago</b>	два дня тому назад	<b>every day</b>	ежедневно
<b>all day</b>	целый день	<b>finally</b>	наконец
<b>alone</b>	один, одна	<b>follow</b>	
<b>answer</b>	отвечать	<b>follow me, please!</b>	Идите за мной, пожалуйста!
<b>arrive</b>	приезжать	<b>for ten days</b>	в течение десяти дней
<b>ask</b>	спрашивать, попросить	<b>free</b>	
<b>ate</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от eat</i>	<b>He was free in the evening.</b>	Он был свободен вечером.
<b>away</b>		<b>from... to...</b>	С... до...
<b>How long were you away?</b>	Сколько времени Вас не было?	<b>from nine o'clock to four o'clock</b>	с девяти до четырёх часов
<b>bank</b>	банк	<b>gave</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от give</i>
<b>beautiful</b>	красивый, прекрасный	<b>get to (the theater)</b>	приехать (в театр)
<b>began</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от begin</i>	<b>got</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от get</i>
<b>begin</b>	начинать(ся)	<b>had</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от have</i>
<b>brought</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от bring</i>	<b>hard</b>	
<b>business</b>		<b>He worked hard.</b>	Он много работал.
<b>business hours on business</b>	рабочее время по делам	<b>held</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от hold</i>
<b>businessmen</b>	бизнесмен	<b>hotel</b>	гостиница
<b>busy</b>	занят	<b>hours</b>	с.м. <b>business hours</b>
<b>came</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от come</i>	<b>knew</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от know</i>
<b>come to</b>	подходить, приходиться	<b>know</b>	знать
<b>cost</b>	стоять	<b>last (verb)</b>	продолжаться (глагол)
<b>cost</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от cost</i>	<b>learn</b>	учить, узнавать
<b>did</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от do</i>	<b>learned a lot about Paris</b>	много узнал(а/и) о Париже
<b>drank</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от drink</i>	<b>live</b>	жить
<b>drove</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от drive</i>		
<b>enjoy</b>	очень нравиться, наслаждаться		

<b>long</b>	длинный, долгий	<b>sign</b>	подписывать
<b>meeting</b>	совещание	<b>slept</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от sleep</i>
<b>most</b>		<b>slowly</b>	медленно
<b>most of the time</b>	большая часть времени	<b>spoke</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от speak</i>
<b>museum</b>	музей	<b>stood</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от stand</i>
<b>Of course!</b>	Конечно!	<b>take a taxi</b>	брать такси
<b>out of the country</b>	за границей	<b>theater</b>	театр
<b>play</b>	спектакль, пьеса	<b>through</b>	
<b>performance</b>	представление	<b>Monday</b>	с понедельника
<b>pour</b>	наливать	<b>through Friday</b>	до пятницы
<b>put</b>		<b>ticket</b>	билет
<b>put</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от put</i>	<b>till</b>	до
<b>put on the table</b>	ставить на стол	<b>together</b>	вместе
<b>read</b>	читать	<b>took</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от take</i>
<b>read</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от read</i>	<b>tourist</b>	турист
<b>sat</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от sit</i>	<b>traffic</b>	уличное движение
<b>saw</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от see</i>	<b>trip</b>	поездка
<b>say</b>	сказать	<b>type</b>	печатать на машинке
<b>Say, you weren't at the office...</b>	Скажите, Вас не было в офисе...	<b>vacation</b>	
<b>see</b>	видеть	<b>on vacation</b>	в отпуске
<b>shop window</b>	витрина	<b>visit</b>	посещать
<b>sick</b>	больной	<b>walk</b>	ходить
<b>sights and sounds (of a city)</b>	атмосфера и звуки (города)	<b>walk around</b>	гулять
		<b>walk back</b>	возвращаться пешком
		<b>went</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от go</i>
		<b>were</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от are</i>
		<b>wrote</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени от write</i>

# Lesson

## MR. MORGAN WENT TO MACY'S TO BUY A JACKET

Mr. Morgan **went** to Macy's. He **bought** a jacket.  
Mr. Morgan **went** to Macy's to **buy** a jacket.



### Exercise

*Example:* Janet is leaving her apartment. She's going to work.

Janet is leaving her apartment to go to work.

1. John went to Spain. He learned Spanish.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. The waiter came to our table. He took our order.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Mr. Morgan went to Paris. He saw Mr. Duval.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Carlo called Janet. He asked her to go out.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The Morgans are getting into their car. They're going home.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Mrs. Johnson took the bus. She went shopping.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Mr. Duval called from Paris. He talked to Mr. Morgan.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. I went to the bank yesterday. I got some money.  
\_\_\_\_\_

## MR. MORGAN WENT TO MACY'S TO BUY A JACKET

*Мистер Морган идёт в Macy's покупать себе пиджак*

В подобных случаях инфинитив глагола с частицей **to** употребляется для выражения цели действия:  
**to buy** — *чтобы купить*

**jacket** — *пиджак, куртка*

**Spain** — *Испания*  
**Spanish** — *испанский*

try on – примерять  
walk over – подойти (к)  
take off – снять (одежду)  
put on – надеть  
blue – синий  
it looks good – выглядит хорошо

**How does it feel?**  
*Как Вы себя в нём чувствуете?*

tight – тесный  
There isn't enough room  
in the shoulders.  
*Немного жмёт в плечах. (Букв.:  
Недостаточно места в плечах.)*  
sleeve – рукав  
too short – слишком короткий  
in a larger size – большего размера

**Why don't you try on the gray one?**  
*Почему бы Вам не примерить серый?*

fit – быть впору, подходить, "сидеть"  
(об одежде)  
quite well – очень хорошо  
much better – гораздо лучше

a little too long – немного длинноваты

**What do you think?**  
*Как Вы думаете?*  
You're right. – Вы правы.  
that's no problem – это не проблема  
shorten – укоротить

there's no charge for alterations  
*перделка одежды производится  
бесплатно (Букв.: за перделку плата  
не берётся)*

**Let me get the tailor for you.**  
*Я найду Вам портного. (Букв.: Позвольте  
мне найти Вам портного.)*

## TRYING ON THE JACKETS

### Recording

Mr. Morgan walked over to the mirror and took off his jacket. Then he put on the blue one.

**Salesman:** Well, it looks good.  
How does it feel?

**Mr. Morgan:** It feels a little tight. There isn't  
enough room in the shoulders,  
and the sleeves are too short.  
Do you have it in a larger size?

**Salesman:** No, I'm sorry. We don't. Why don't  
you try on the gray one?

**Mr. Morgan:** All right... Hm... This one fits quite  
well. It feels much better  
in the shoulders. But the sleeves  
are just a little too long. What do  
you think?

**Salesman:** You're right. But that's no problem. We can shorten them.  
And, of course, there's no charge for alterations.

**Mr. Morgan:** OK. Good! I'll take it.

**Salesman:** Fine. Let me get the tailor for you.

**Mr. Morgan:** Thank you.



### Action Questions

**Answer!** Did Mr. Morgan try on the gray jacket first?  
Which jacket did he try on first?  
Did it feel too tight?  
It was too tight in the shoulders, right?  
**Excuse me!** Where was it too tight?  
And what about the gray jacket? Did the gray jacket fit better?  
Were the sleeves a little too long or a little too short?  
They were too long, but the tailor can shorten them, right?

# THE TAILOR WAS OUT TO LUNCH

## Recording

Mr. Morgan waited for a few minutes. The salesman came back again, but without the tailor.

**Salesman:** I'm very sorry, sir, but the tailor is out to lunch right now. Can you come back at about three?

**Mr. Morgan:** No, I'm sorry. I can't. I have an appointment in my office at three-thirty.

**Salesman:** Well, we're open late this evening. The tailor is here until seven. Can you come back after work?

**Mr. Morgan:** I can be here at six-thirty. Is that too late?

**Salesman:** No, that's fine. The tailor only needs about five minutes.

**Mr. Morgan:** Very good. Thank you.



# THE TAILOR WAS OUT TO LUNCH

*Портной вышел на обед*

**salesman** – продавец

**without** – без

**can** – мочь (иметь возможность)

Внимание! Глагол **can** имеет некоторые особенности спряжения.

В отличие от других глаголов вспомогательный глагол **can**:

– не имеет окончания **-s** в третьем лице единственного числа: **I can/he can**;

– не требует вспомогательного глагола **do** при образовании отрицательной и вопросительной форм: **I can't/can you?**

– следующий за ним глагол в форме инфинитива употребляется без частицы **to**: **I can drive**.

Глагол **can** относится к так называемым “модальным глаголам”.

Он употребляется в сочетании с другими глаголами и выражает:

– возможность совершить действие:

**Can you come back at three?**

*Вы можете вернуться в три часа?*

– способность или умение:

**Can you speak French?**

*Вы умеете говорить по-французски?*

**appointment** – встреча

**that's fine** – хорошо

**need** – нуждаться

## Action Questions

**Answer!** Did the salesman come back?  
Did the tailor come back with him?  
Where was the tailor? Was he in the store or out to lunch?  
Can Mr. Morgan come back at three?

**Excuse me!** He can come back at three or he can't come back at three?  
What time can he be at the store?  
Does the tailor need twenty minutes?  
How long does he need?

## Exercise A

Выполните это упражнение, употребляя в кратких ответах глагол **can**.



## Exercise A

*Example:* Can you be here by six-thirty?

Yes, I can.

No, I can't

1. Can you speak French?

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

No, \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Can the tailor shorten the sleeves?

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

No, \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Can Mr. Phillips speak three languages?

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

No, \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Can I see the clock from your desk?

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

No, \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Can Mrs. Morgan call her husband before noon?

Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

No, \_\_\_\_\_.



## Exercise B

## Exercise B

Ещё одно упражнение, направленное на закрепление навыков использования глагола **can**. Ответьте на два вопроса одним предложением, в котором глагол **can** стоял бы сначала в утвердительной, а затем в отрицательной форме. См. пример.

*Example:* Can you read? Can you read Italian?

I can read, but I can't read Italian.

1. Can this waiter take the order? Can he take it right now?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Can Bill drive? Can he drive a bus?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. Can you be here tomorrow? Can you be here in the morning?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Can the salesman work late? Can he work late tonight?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. Can you call me tomorrow? Can you call me before noon?

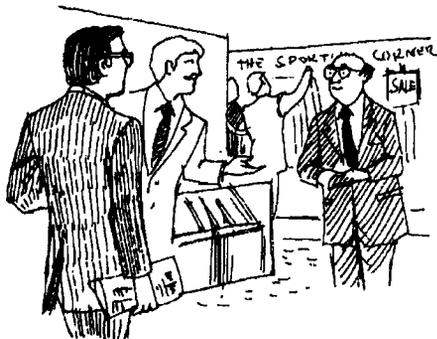
\_\_\_\_\_

**tonight** — сегодня вечером

# SPEAKING TO THE TAILOR

## Recording

Mr. Morgan's meeting ended early. He left the office at five o'clock and went back to Macy's. He saw his salesman and walked over to him.



**Salesman:** Good afternoon, sir.

**Mr. Morgan:** Good afternoon. I'm here to see the tailor.

**Salesman:** Oh, yes. You're Mr. Morgan, aren't you?

**Mr. Morgan:** That's right. The tailor is expecting me.

**Salesman:** Yes, He's right over there... Mr. Feldman!

**Mr. Feldman:** Yes, sir?

**Salesman:** This gentleman is here for some alterations. Can you take care of him?

**Mr. Feldman:** Certainly. Step this way to the mirror, sir. Would you please put on the jacket?... Hm... let's see... Yes, the sleeves are a little too long, aren't they? But that's no problem. I can take them up. There! How's that? Is that about the right length?

**Mr. Morgan:** Yes, that's fine. How long do you need to do the alterations?

**Mr. Feldman:** Oh... about three weeks.

**Mr. Morgan:** Three weeks? That seems like a long time, doesn't it? Why does it take so long?

**Mr. Feldman:** Well, it usually doesn't take more than a week or so, but I just came back from vacation, and there's a big backlog.

**Mr. Morgan:** All right. Three weeks is fine.

**You're Mr. Morgan, aren't you?**  
*Вы мистер Морган, не так ли?*

**expect** — ожидать

**right over there** — как раз там

**gentleman** — господин  
**take care of** — заняться (чем-либо), позаботиться (о ком-либо)

**Step this way.** — Идите сюда.

**mirror** — зеркало

**take them up** — укоротить

**There!** — Вот!

**How's that?** — А так?

**right length** — нормальная длина

**How long do you need to do the alterations?**

*Сколько времени Вам нужно для переделки?*

**seem like** — казаться

**..., doesn't it?** — ..., Вы не находите?

**Why does it take so long?**

*Почему на это уходит столько времени?*

**or so** — или около того

**I just came back...**

*Я только что вернулся*

**backlog** — много заказов

## YOU'RE MR. MORGAN, AREN'T YOU?

*Вы мистер Морган, не так ли?*

Такая конструкция, состоящая из главного предложения в утвердительной форме и краткого вопроса в отрицательной форме, называется в грамматике английского языка разделительным вопросом. Она употребляется, когда спрашивающий почти уверен в ответе или хочет убедиться в правильности своего предположения.

Тот, кто говорит "**You're Mr. Morgan, aren't you**", почти уверен, что его собеседник — мистер Морган. Это предложение можно перевести на русский язык следующим образом: *Вы мистер Морган, не так ли?* или *Вы ведь мистер Морган?*

Употребление глаголов во второй части таких предложений имеет ряд особенностей:

- а) Если в главном предложении употребляется глагол **be, can** (или некоторые другие глаголы), то во второй части (в кратком вопросе) повторяется тот же глагол.  
— **She's British, isn't she?**  
— **He can see me tomorrow, can't he?**  
б) Если в главном предложении стоит любой другой глагол, то во второй части употребляется вспомогательный глагол **do**:  
— **You accept traveler's checks, don't you?**  
— **He smokes, doesn't he?**
2. Глагол во второй части разделительного вопроса употребляется в той же временной форме, что и глагол в главном предложении:  
— **You were on vacation, weren't you?**  
— **She took the bus, didn't she?**

Исключение: если в главном предложении стоит **I am**, то во второй части употребляется **aren't I** (по аналогии с первым лицом множественного числа **aren't we**). Такая особенность обусловлена соображениями благозвучия.

## Action Questions

**Answer!**

**Excuse me!**

**Excuse me!**

**Excuse me!**

Mr. Morgan went back to Macy's after his meeting, didn't he?

What did he do after his meeting?

Who did he speak to first, the salesman or the tailor?

The salesman took care of him, didn't he?

Who did the salesman take care of?

The tailor needs three weeks to do the alterations, doesn't he?

How long does he need to do the alterations?

Did Mr. Morgan just come back from vacation?

The tailor just came back from vacation, didn't he?

## YOU'RE MR. MORGAN, AREN'T YOU?

Mr. Morgan *is* at Macy's, **isn't he?**

Mr. Duval *is* from Paris, **isn't he?**

We're taking the train, **aren't we?**

It was a good movie, **wasn't it?**

We were right, **weren't we?**

Mr. Morgan can see me tomorrow, **can't he?**

Mr. Morgan *speaks* English, **doesn't he?**

You take sugar, **don't you?**

Mr. Morgan speaks French, **doesn't he?**

You live on Main Street, **don't you?**

They have a big apartment, **don't they?**

It takes about an hour, **doesn't it?**

Mr. Morgan *bought* a jacket, **didn't he?**

You went to the movies, **didn't you?**

Bill had a red car, **didn't he?**

She worked very hard, **didn't she?**

We walked for an hour, **didn't we?**

They sat over there, **didn't they?**



## Exercise

Example: Mr. Morgan went to Macy's, didn't he?

1. The salesman gave you 20% off, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
2. John is driving home, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
3. Mr. Duval had an appointment, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
4. Those people are still waiting, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
5. The meeting was yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
6. The secretaries worked yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
7. Jim Murphy speaks a little Spanish, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
8. I can call you from the airport, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
9. The sleeves were too long, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
10. They sell TV sets at Macy's, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
11. I can get a taxi at the station, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
12. Mr. Morgan bought the gray jacket, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
13. Janet lives in an apartment, \_\_\_\_\_ ?
14. Mr. Feldman is a tailor, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**gave 20% off** – снизил(а) цену  
на двадцать процентов

**TV set** – телевизор

## CASH OR CHARGE?

*(Будете платить) наличными или по кредитной карте?*

В США широко распространена система оплаты товаров с помощью кредитных карт; многие люди предпочитают именно такой способ расчётов и имеют при себе очень небольшие суммы наличных денег. Поэтому продавцы задают такой вопрос почти автоматически.

**finish with** — закончить (с)

**All set?** — Это всё?

**shirt** — рубашка

**pants** — брюки

**should** — нужно

**really** — действительно

**a couple of** — пара

**tie** — галстук

**because** — потому что

**on sale** — на распродаже

**That's a good idea.**

*Это хорошая идея.*

**go with (the jacket)** — подходить (о пиджаке)

**stripes** — полосы

**plain** — однотонный

**pay for** — платить за

**charge** — платить по кредитной карте, записать на счёт

**credit card** — кредитная карта

**less** — минус, менее

**plus** — плюс

**sales tax** — налог с продаж

**that comes to** — это составляет

**all together** — всего, всё вместе

**sign** — подписывать

**at the bottom** — внизу

**There you are.** — Пожалуйста.

**receipt** — квитанция, чек

**send** — отправлять

**next door** — рядом, по соседству

## CASH OR CHARGE?

After he finished with the tailor, Mr. Morgan went back to his salesman.

**Salesman:** All set, sir? Do you need anything else? Shirts... pants? You should really buy a couple of these ties.

**Mr. Morgan:** Why?

**Salesman:** Because they're on sale — two for \$10.00.

**Mr. Morgan:** That's a good idea. I need a nice tie to go with this jacket. I really should buy a couple. Let's see... what do you have here... hm... this red one with stripes is nice, and... I like this plain blue one, also. I'll take these two, please.

**Salesman:** Very good, sir. Now, how would you like to pay for that, cash or charge?

**Mr. Morgan:** I'd like to charge it, please.

**Salesman:** May I see your credit card?

**Mr. Morgan:** Here you are.

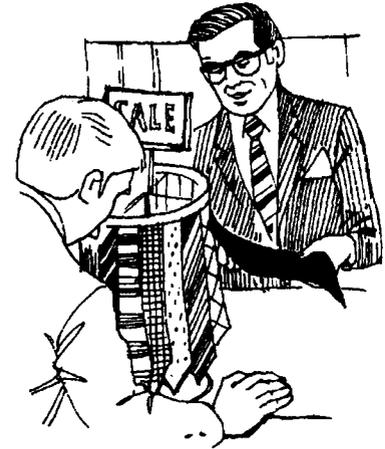
**Salesman:** Thank you. Now, let's see... \$200.00 less 30%... that's \$140.00, and \$10.00 for the ties, that's \$150.00, plus 8% sales tax... \$12.00... uh... that comes to \$162.00 all together. Please sign right here at the bottom.

**Mr. Morgan:** There you are.

**Salesman:** Thank you very much, and here's your receipt. You can pick up your jacket in three weeks, or we can send it.

**Mr. Morgan:** Well, my office is right next door, so I can pick it up.

**Salesman:** Very good, sir, and here are your ties. Thank you very much.



# Question

## Action Questions

- Answer!** Did Mr. Morgan go back to his salesman after he finished with the tailor?
- Excuse me!** Where did he go after he finished with the tailor?  
Did Mr. Morgan need a tie?  
He needed a tie to go with his new jacket, right?  
Were the ties on sale?
- Excuse me!** They were on sale or they weren't on sale?  
Mr. Morgan can buy two ties for \$10.00, right?
- Excuse me!** How many ties can he buy for \$10.00?



## Exercise

1. Where did Mr. Morgan go after he finished with the tailor?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. How many ties did Mr. Morgan buy?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. How much did the ties cost?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Did he pay for the ties or did he charge them?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. How much did the bill come to all together?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What did the salesman give Mr. Morgan after he signed?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## CAN, SHOULD, OR MAY

Сравните приведенные примеры, в которых использованы модальные глаголы.

Также как и **can**, **should** и **may** имеют отличающиеся от общих правила спряжения: они не изменяют своей формы при спряжении — к ним не присоединяется окончание -s в третьем лице единственного числа:

- **I should go; he should go.**
- **I may leave; she may leave.**

Не требуют вспомогательного глагола **do**:

- **Can you speak French?**
- **May I leave?**

После них не ставится частица **to** перед инфинитивом:  
— **I can drive.**

Как Вы уже знаете, глагол **can** выражает возможность или способность что-либо сделать:  
— **I can speak French.** (*Я умею говорить по-французски.*)

Глагол **should** выражает предположение, рекомендацию или долженствование:  
— **We should leave now.** (*Мы должны сейчас уходить.*)

Глагол **may** употребляется, чтобы выразить просьбу и дать разрешение.

- **May I leave?** (*Могу я уйти?*)

В разговорной речи глагол **may** часто заменяется глаголом **can**.

## CAN, SHOULD, OR MAY?

**Can you speak French?**  
— *Yes, of course. I'm from Paris.*

**May I leave now?**  
— *Certainly. The meeting is over.*

**It's 7:30. We should go now.**  
— *That's right, the movie begins at eight.*



## Exercise

Fill in the blanks with **may**, **can** (**can't**) or **should** (**shouldn't**).

1. Mrs. Turner is from Canada. She \_\_\_\_\_ speak English and French.
2. Your plane leaves at four, but you \_\_\_\_\_ be at the airport by three-thirty.
3. Excuse me! \_\_\_\_\_ I come in?
4. Mr. Duval doesn't have a car because he \_\_\_\_\_ drive.
5. Good evening, sir. \_\_\_\_\_ I take your order?
6. That book is very interesting; you \_\_\_\_\_ read it.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ go to the bank today because it's closed.
8. It's very late. We \_\_\_\_\_ go home now.

# WHY, BECAUSE, AND SO



## Exercise A

**Why** does it take three weeks?  
— It takes three weeks **because** there's a big backlog.  
There's a big backlog, **so** it takes three weeks.

*Example:* John can't go out tonight because he's working late.

*Why can't John go out tonight?*

1. Mr. Morgan went to Macy's because he needed a jacket.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. The tailor can't see you because he's out to lunch.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. I bought the ties because they were on sale.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Mary likes the dress because it fits well.

\_\_\_\_\_



## Exercise B

*Example:* It's Sunday, so Janet isn't working today.

*Janet isn't working today because it's Sunday.*

1. The bus was too crowded, so I took a train.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. Bill is working late, so he can't go to the movies.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. There's a backlog, so the alterations take three weeks.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Mary can't drive, so she doesn't have a car.

\_\_\_\_\_

## Exercise A

Преобразуйте утвердительные предложения в вопросительные, заменяя союз **because** вопросительным местоимением **why**. См. пример.

## Exercise B

Преобразуйте предложения, заменяя союз **so** на **because**. Обратите внимание на порядок следования главного и придаточного предложений в обоих вариантах.

# LOOK AT IT AND PICK IT UP

**He's looking at it.**  
**He's trying it on.**

Из раздела 7 Вы узнали, что в английском языке существует много устойчивых выражений, которые состоят из глагола и следующего за ним слова (**get dressed, get up** и т.д.). Такие выражения бывают двух видов: разделяемые и неразделяемые. Как показано в таблице, в неразделяемых глагольных выражениях (**look at**) сохраняется один и тот же порядок слов независимо от того, какой частью речи выражено дополнение — местоимением или существительным (**He's looking at it**).

В разделяемых глагольных выражениях предлог может менять своё место; в случае, если последующее дополнение выражено местоимением, оно ставится непосредственно за глаголом, и лишь затем — предлог, входящий в глагольное сочетание (**He's trying it on**).  
Запомните: порядок слов изменяется только тогда, когда дополнение выражено местоимением (**it, them**).

## Exercise

Составьте предложения с местоимениями в роли дополнений. Обратите особое внимание на порядок слов в разделяемых и неразделяемых глагольных выражениях. См. примеры.

Mr. Morgan is **looking at** **the jacket**.

He's **looking at** **it**.

look at  
pay for  
shop for  
wait for  
look for

Mr. Morgan is **trying on** **the jacket**.

He's **trying** **it** **on**.

try on  
pick up  
take off  
take up  
put on



## Exercise

*Examples:* The tailor took up the sleeves.

*He took them up.*

Mrs. Morgan paid for the dress.

*She paid for it.*

1. Mr. Duval took off his coat.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Janet is looking at the menu.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Peter put on his shirt.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Would you like to try on these jackets?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The passengers are waiting for the bus.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Please don't pick up those books!  
\_\_\_\_\_



## Exercise A

Fill in with **for, in, on, to, off, or up.**

1. There isn't enough room \_\_\_\_\_ the shoulders.
2. Mr. Morgan tried \_\_\_\_\_ the new jacket.
3. Mr. Duval is shopping \_\_\_\_\_ a suit.
4. Peter went to the store \_\_\_\_\_ buy a record.
5. You can pick \_\_\_\_\_ your jacket tomorrow.
6. The customers took \_\_\_\_\_ their coats.



## Exercise B

*Example:* My apartment isn't **big**; it's very **small**.

1. The movie **began** at eight, and \_\_\_\_\_ at ten.
2. The Morgans **got out** of their car, and went \_\_\_\_\_ the restaurant.
3. Peter **put down** the book, and \_\_\_\_\_ his new toy.
4. Linda is **selling** her big car and \_\_\_\_\_ a small one.
5. Mr. Morgan **took off** the blue jacket, and \_\_\_\_\_ the gray one.
6. Mary got home **early**, but her brother got home \_\_\_\_\_.

## Exercise A

При изучении иностранных языков особые сложности связаны с правильным употреблением предлогов. Это упражнение поможет проверить, хорошо ли Вы усвоили наиболее употребительные английские предлоги (выделены жирным шрифтом).

## Exercise B

Дополните приведённые предложения словами и выражениями, по смыслу противоположными выделенным словам. См. пример.

# Vocabulary **ten**

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 10.

<b>All set?</b>	Это всё?
<b>all together</b>	всего
<b>alteration</b>	переделка
<b>appointment</b>	встреча
<b>at the bottom</b>	внизу
<b>backlog</b>	много заказов
<b>because</b>	потому что
<b>better</b>	лучше
<b>blue</b>	синий, голубой
<b>British</b>	британский, английский
<b>buy</b>	покупать
<b>can</b>	мочь (иметь возможность)
<b>Canada</b>	Канада
<b>cash</b>	
<b>cash or charge?</b>	наличными или по кредитной карте?
<b>charge</b>	
<b>there is no charge</b>	это бесплатно
<b>charge (verb)</b>	платить по кредитной карте, записывать на счёт
<b>come to</b>	
<b>that comes to...</b>	это составляет...
<b>couple</b>	
<b>a couple (of)</b>	несколько, пара
<b>credit card</b>	кредитная карта
<b>do the alterations</b>	переделывать
<b>end (noun)</b>	конец ( <i>существительное</i> )
<b>enough</b>	достаточно
<b>There isn't enough room in the shoulders</b>	Немного жмёт в плечах.
<b>even</b>	даже

<b>expect</b>	ожидать
<b>feel</b>	
<b>How does it feel?</b>	Как Вы себя в нём чувствуете?
<b>finish (with)</b>	закончить (с)
<b>fit</b>	“сидеть” (об одежде)
<b>gentleman</b>	господин
<b>get (something)</b>	достать (что-либо)
<b>get the tailor</b>	найти портного
<b>go with (the jacket)</b>	подходить (к пиджаку)
<b>gray</b>	серый
<b>have to</b>	должен (должна, должны)
<b>idea</b>	мысль, идея
<b>That's a good idea!</b>	Хорошая мысль!
<b>in three weeks</b>	через три недели
<b>interesting</b>	интересный
<b>large(r)</b>	большой (больше)
<b>length</b>	длина
<b>less</b>	меньше
<b>like</b>	
<b>I like it.</b>	Мне это нравится.
<b>I'd like to</b>	Я бы хотел(а)...
<b>That seems like...</b>	Похоже на...
<b>look</b>	
<b>look for</b>	искать
<b>look good</b>	выглядеть хорошо
<b>mirror</b>	зеркало
<b>much better</b>	гораздо лучше
<b>need</b>	нуждаться
<b>How long do you need...?</b>	Сколько времени Вам нужно...?

<b>new</b>	новый
<b>next door</b>	рядом, по соседству
<b>out to lunch</b>	вышел на обед
<b>pants</b>	брюки
<b>pay for</b>	платить за
<b>pick up (the jacket)</b>	зайти забрать (пиджак)
<b>plain</b>	однотонный
<b>plus</b>	плюс
<b>problem</b>	проблема; задача
<b>That's no problem.</b>	Это не проблема.
<b>put on</b>	надеть
<b>quite well</b>	<i>очень хорошо</i>
<b>really</b>	действительно
<b>receipt</b>	квитанция, чек
<b>right</b>	
<b>right here</b>	прямо здесь
<b>right over there</b>	как раз там
<b>right length</b>	нормальная длина
<b>You're right.</b>	Вы правы.
<b>room</b>	место; комната
<b>There isn't enough room in the shoulders.</b>	Немного жмёт в плечах.
<b>sale</b>	распродажа
<b>be on sale</b>	продаваться по сниженной цене
<b>salesman</b>	продавец
<b>send</b>	посылать, отправлять
<b>shirt</b>	рубашка
<b>shop (verb)</b>	делать покупки
<b>short</b>	короткий
<b>shorten</b>	укоротить
<b>should</b>	нужно, должен

<b>shoulder</b>	плечо
<b>sleeve</b>	рукав
<b>so</b>	
<b>(a week) or so</b>	(неделю) или около того
<b>so long</b>	так долго
<b>so</b>	так что
<b>sorry</b>	
<b>I'm sorry.</b>	Извините.
<b>Spanish</b>	испанский
<b>Step this way.</b>	Идите сюда.
<b>stripe</b>	полоса
<b>sugar</b>	сахар
<b>tailor</b>	портной
<b>take</b>	
<b>take off (the jacket)</b>	снять (пиджак)
<b>Why does it take so long?</b>	Почему это занимает столько времени?
<b>take up (the sleeves)</b>	укоротить (рукава)
<b>take care of</b>	заняться (чем-либо), заботиться (о ком-либо)
<b>tax</b>	налог
<b>That's fine.</b>	Хорошо!
<b>There!</b>	Вот!
<b>think</b>	думать
<b>tight</b>	тесный
<b>tonight</b>	сегодня вечером
<b>too (short)</b>	слишком (короткий)
<b>toy</b>	игрушка
<b>traveler's check</b>	дорожный чек
<b>try on (the jacket)</b>	примерять (пиджак)
<b>TV set</b>	телевизор
<b>walk over (to)</b>	подойти (к)
<b>why</b>	почему
<b>without</b>	без
<b>wool</b>	шерсть

# Lesson **eleven**

## JANET IS GOING TO GO ON VACATION

*Джанет собирается уйти в отпуск*

**is going to be** — намеревается быть  
**be** — быть

**Janet has three weeks' vacation every year.**

*У Джанет три недели отпуска в году.*

**visit (her sister)**  
*посетить (свою сестру)*

**winter** — зима  
**summer** — лето  
**spring** — весна  
**fall** — осень

**move** — переезжать  
**near the ocean** — у океана

**town** — город  
**not far from** — недалеко от

**love** — любить, обожать  
**seashore** — морской берег

**go to the beach** — идти на пляж

**lie** — лежать  
**sand** — песок  
**brother-in-law** — здесь: зять (муж сестры)  
**sailboat** — парусное судно, яхта  
**go sailing** — плавать под парусом

Отметьте, что глагол **go** часто употребляется в сочетании с причастием настоящего времени других глаголов для обозначения различных занятий и развлечений на отдыхе.

**on the weekends** — по выходным

**love to**  
*любить, обожать (+ инфинитив глагола)*

**look forward to**  
*(радостно) ждать, надеяться*  
**She's looking forward to her vacation.**  
*Ее не терпится поехать в отпуск.*

## JANET IS GOING TO GO ON VACATION

### Recording

Today is Thursday. Janet is at the office today. She's working. Tomorrow is Friday. Janet is going to be at the office tomorrow, too. But she isn't going to be at the office next week! Next week she's going to be on vacation. Janet has three weeks' vacation every year.

Janet usually takes one week of her vacation in the winter, and two weeks in the summer. But this year she's going to take her "summer" vacation in the spring. She's going to visit her sister Carol in California. Janet's sister moved to California last fall. She lives near the ocean in a small town not far from Los Angeles.



Janet loves the seashore. She likes to go to the beach, lie in the sand, and just relax. Janet's brother-in-law Fred has a sailboat, and he, Janet, and Carol are going to go sailing on the weekends. Janet loves to go sailing. She's really looking forward to her vacation in California.

### Question Questions

**Answer!**

Is Janet at the office this week?  
And what about next week? Is she going to be at the office next week, too?  
Is she going to be at the office or on vacation next week?  
Is she going to go to Florida on vacation?  
Where is she going to go?  
Is she going to visit her brother in California?  
Who is she going to visit in California?



## Exercise

1. Is Janet at the office today?

---

2. Where is she going to be tomorrow?

---

3. Is she going to be at the office or on vacation next week?

---

4. How much vacation does Janet have every year?

---

5. How much vacation does she usually take in the summer?

---

6. When is she going to take her "summer" vacation this year?

---

7. Who is she going to visit?

---

8. Where does Janet's sister live?

---

9. What does Janet like to do at the beach?

---

10. Who has a sailboat?

---

11. When is Janet going to go sailing?

---

12. Is Janet looking forward to her vacation?

---

## WHERE IS JANET GOING TO BE?

Глагол **go** может употребляться как вспомогательный, обозначая при этом намерение в будущем. В таком случае к глаголу **go** в настоящем длительном времени добавляется инфинитив (неопределённая форма) смыслового глагола с частицей **to**:

**They are going to buy a new car.**  
*Они собираются купить новую машину.*

Такая конструкция широко используется в английском языке для обозначения чьих-либо намерений или предстоящего события.

Mr. Morgan is **going to fly** to Paris tomorrow.  
I **am going to have** wine with dinner.  
They **are going to visit** me next week.

## WHERE IS JANET GOING TO BE?

Today Janet **is** at the office.

Next week she' **s going to be** in California.



### Exercise

Make sentences with **going to**:

*Example:* Last year Mary went to **Paris**. (*Rome*)

Next year *she's going to go to Rome.*

1. Today I'm taking a **train** to Chicago. (*plane*)

Next week \_\_\_\_\_.

2. This morning Bill had **coffee** with his breakfast. (*tea*)

Tomorrow morning \_\_\_\_\_.

3. Last night the Morgans **went to a restaurant**. (*eat at home*)

Tomorrow night \_\_\_\_\_.

4. This week Janet **is at the office**. (*be on vacation*)

Next week \_\_\_\_\_.

5. I read a **newspaper** this morning. (*magazine*)

Tonight \_\_\_\_\_.

6. John is learning **Spanish** this year. (*French*)

Next year \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Yesterday Susan saw a **movie**. (*play*)

On Saturday \_\_\_\_\_.

8. This weekend Fred **is at home**. (*go sailing*)

Next weekend \_\_\_\_\_.

# WANT TO / LIKE TO / HAVE TO

## Positive

I	}	want to...
you		like to...
we		have to...
they	}	wants to...
he		likes to...
she		has to...

## Negative

I	}	<b>don't</b> want to
you		<b>don't</b> like to
we		<b>don't</b> have to
they	}	<b>doesn't</b> want to
he		<b>doesn't</b> like to
she		<b>doesn't</b> have to

## Question

Do	}	I	}	want to	
}		you		}	like to
		we			}
	they				
Does	}	he	}		
}		she		}	

I **have to**...  
I **don't** have to...  
Do I have to...?

I **can**...  
I **can't**...  
Can I...?

go  
come  
take  
have  
be  
leave  
visit  
work  
buy  
start  
wait  
call etc.

# WANT TO / LIKE TO / HAVE TO

Глаголы **want to**, **like to**, **have to** могут употребляться в качестве модальных, выражая некоторые оттенки смысла этих глаголов. В отличие от **can**, **should** и **may** эти глаголы спрягаются по общим для всех глаголов правилам:

1) После них ставится частица **to**:

**I want to drive.**

*Я хочу вести машину.*

(Но: **I can drive.** *Я умею водить машину.*)

2) Они имеют окончание **-s** в третьем лице единственного числа:

**She wants to leave.**

*Она хочет уйти.*

(Но: **She may leave.** *Она может уйти.*)

3) Отрицательная и вопросительная формы этих глаголов образуются с помощью вспомогательного глагола **do**:

**You don't like to wait.**

*Вы не любите ждать.*

(Но: **You can't wait.** *Вы не можете ждать.*)

**Do you have to go out?**

*Вы должны выйти?*

(Но: **Can you go out?** *Вы можете выйти?*)

Различия в спряжении правильных и неправильных модальных глаголов наглядно показаны в приведённой таблице.

## Exercise

Поставьте следующие предложения в вопросительную форму. Обратите внимание, что некоторые из модальных глаголов в данных предложениях являются неправильными. См. пример.



## Exercise

*Examples:* Janet wants to go home now.

*Does Janet want to go home now?*

---

I can't work tonight.

*Can you work tonight?*

---

1. I want to see a movie tonight.

---

2. Mary can't speak French.

---

3. Janet likes to go sailing in the summer.

---

4. We don't like to eat a big breakfast.

---

5. Those customers don't want to wait.

---

6. Mr. Morgan can see you tomorrow at ten.

---

7. Bill likes to get to work early.

---

8. Mr. Tanaka wants to go to New York next week.

---

9. Mrs. Morgan likes to take long trips.

---

10. Mr. Duval can't see you next week.

---



## Exercise A

*Example:* Do you want to eat? Do you want to eat spaghetti?

*I want to eat, but I don't want to eat spaghetti.*

---

1. Does Janet want to go out? Does she want to go out tonight?  

---
2. Can you type? Can you type French?  

---
3. Does Peter have to go home? Does he have to go home now?  

---
4. Does Linda like to eat veal? Does she like to eat veal for breakfast?  

---
5. Can you drive? Can you drive a bus?  

---



## Exercise B

*Example:* You have to be home **at eleven o'clock**.

***What time** do I have to be home?*

---

1. He likes to read the newspaper **in the morning**.  

---
2. Mary can't drink wine **because she's only ten**.  

---
3. I want to buy **two** suits.  

---
4. I want to try on the **blue** jacket.  

---
5. The children have to stay **on the sidewalk**.  

---

В данных упражнениях также повторяются модальные глаголы. Выполняя их, обратите особое внимание на различия между правильными и неправильными глаголами.

### Exercise A

Ответьте на два вопроса одним предложением, используя союз **but**. См. пример.

### Exercise B

Задайте вопросы к выделенным словам. См. пример.

## WHAT'S THE LARGEST STATE IN THE UNITED STATES?

Правила образования сравнительной и превосходной степеней прилагательных в английском языке довольно просты. При образовании степеней сравнения выделяются три группы прилагательных:

**1. короткие прилагательные** (один или два слога)  
Такие прилагательные образуют сравнительную степень при помощи окончания **-er**, а превосходную — при помощи окончания **-est**:  
long, longer, longest  
*длинный, длиннее, самый длинный*

Необходимо отметить следующие особенности написания таких прилагательных:

**а.** короткие прилагательные, оканчивающиеся на согласный + у, в сравнительной степени приобретают окончание **-ier**, а в превосходной степени — окончание **-iest** (т.е. у превращается в **i**):

early, earlier, earliest  
*ранний, более ранний, самый ранний*

**б.** если прилагательные оканчиваются на краткий ударный гласный + согласный, то конечная согласная буква удваивается:

big, bigger, biggest

*большой, больше, самый большой*

**2. длинные прилагательные** (более двух слогов)

Степени сравнения многосложных прилагательных образуются при помощи служебного слова **more** для сравнительной степени и **most** — для превосходной степени:

expensive, more expensive, most expensive

*дорогой, дороже, самый дорогой*

**3. неправильные прилагательные**

Некоторые прилагательные образуют степени сравнения не по правилам; их следует просто заучить:

good, better, best

*хороший, лучше, самый лучший*

## WHAT'S THE LARGEST STATE IN THE UNITED STATES?

Florida is **large**.

California is **larger than** Florida.

Alaska is **the largest** state in the United States.

big
small
nice
long
early
good
much/many
expensive
beautiful
interesting

bigger  
smaller  
nicer  
longer  
earlier

better  
more

more expensive  
more beautiful  
more interesting

than... the

biggest  
smallest  
nicest  
longest  
earliest

best  
most

most expensive  
most beautiful  
most interesting



### Exercise

*Example:* Los Angeles is the **largest** city in California. (*large*)

1. Noon is too late. Can you come a little \_\_\_\_\_? (*early*)
2. French wine is \_\_\_\_\_ than California wine. (*expensive*)
3. Some of the \_\_\_\_\_ coffee in the world comes from Brazil. (*good*)
4. The Mississippi is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ rivers in the world. (*long*)
5. Tonight's movie was \_\_\_\_\_ than the one I saw last week. (*interesting*)

# FINDING A TAXI

## Recording

Janet got off the bus at the Biltmore Hotel in downtown Los Angeles. From the Biltmore she had to take a taxi to get to Fred's office. She didn't see one in front of the hotel, so she went over to the doorman.

"Can you tell me where I can find a taxi?" she asked. The doorman told her there was a taxi stand right around the corner. "There are always two or three taxis at this time of day," he said. Then he asked her if she needed help with her suitcases. Janet thanked him and told him it wasn't necessary.

When she walked around the corner, she saw three taxis at the taxi stand. She went over to the first one and asked the driver if he was free. "Where do you want to go?" he asked. Janet told him she wanted to go to 3300 Wilshire Boulevard. "Sure. Let me help you with those bags," said the driver.



## Action Questions

- Answer!**
- Did Janet get to the Biltmore Hotel by taxi?
  - How did she get there?
  - Did she speak to someone at the Biltmore?
  - Who did she speak to?
  - Did the doorman tell her there was a taxi stand around the corner?
- Excuse me!**
- What did he tell her?
  - Did he ask her if she needed help with her suitcases?
  - What did he ask her?

## Exercise (стр. 132)

Поставьте данные в скобках прилагательные в зависимости от смысла предложения в сравнительную или превосходную степень. См. пример.

**expensive** — дорогой  
**river** — река

## FINDING A TAXI

*Как найти такси*

**downtown** — центр города  
**doorman** — швейцар

**Can you tell me where I can find a taxi?**  
*Вы можете мне сказать, где я могу найти такси?*

Обратите внимание на сочетание глагола **tell** с местоимением **me** в роли дополнения, которое заменяет одушевленное существительное. Так же, как и после глаголов **ask** (*спрашивать*) и **answer** (*отвечать*), после **tell** не ставится предлог перед дополнением.

**taxi stand** — стоянка такси

**around the corner** — за углом

**at this time of day** — в это время дня

**if** — если

**help** — помощь

**suitcase** — чемодан

**thank** — благодарить

**necessary** — необходимо

**driver** — водитель

**sure** — конечно

**Let me help you with those bags.**  
*Позвольте помочь Вам с багажом.  
(букв.: с этими сумками.)*

He told her (that) he was free.

В данной таблице показаны различия в грамматических конструкциях, используемых в прямой и косвенной речи.

1. По правилам английского языка следует согласовывать времена, используемые в главном и придаточном предложениях:

He **said**: "I'm free." (*прямая речь*)  
He **told** her he **was** free. (*косвенная речь*)

2. При переходе из прямой речи в косвенную происходит логическая замена личных местоимений:

He **said**: "I'm free."  
He **told** her (that) **he** was free.  
He **said** that **he** was free.

3. Глагол **say**, как правило, заменяется глаголом **tell** с прямым дополнением:

He **said**: "I'm free."  
He **told** her (that) he was free.  
He **said** that he was free.

4. Союз **that** часто опускается, особенно в разговорной речи.

### Exercise

Переведите следующие предложения из прямой речи в косвенную, опуская при этом союз **that**. См. пример.

## WHAT DID HE TELL HER?

The driver said (to Janet):

He told her...

"I'm free."

... (that) he **was** free.

"I can take you there."

... (that) he **could** take her there.



### Exercise

Example: Janet said: "I need a taxi."

She told the doorman she needed a taxi.

1. The doorman said: "There's a taxi stand around the corner."

He told Janet \_\_\_\_\_.

2. The doorman said: "There are always a few taxis there."

He told Janet \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The driver said: "I'm not busy."

He told Janet \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Janet said: "I want to go to 3300 Wilshire Boulevard."

She told the driver \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Janet said: "I don't need any help with my bags."

She told the driver \_\_\_\_\_.

# WHAT DID SHE ASK HIM?

The driver asked (Janet):

"Can I help you with your bags?"

"Where do you want to go?"

He asked her...

... **if** he could help her with her bags.

... **where** she wanted to go.



## Exercise

Example: Janet asked: "Are you free?"

She asked the driver if he was free.

1. Janet asked: "Can you help me?"

She asked the doorman \_\_\_\_\_.

2. She asked: "Where can I find a taxi?"

She asked the doorman \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The driver asked: "Where do you want to go?"

He asked Janet \_\_\_\_\_.

4. The driver asked: "Can I help you with your bags?"

He asked Janet \_\_\_\_\_.

5. The driver asked: "How many suitcases do you have?"

He asked Janet \_\_\_\_\_.

## He asked her if he could help her...

При переводе вопросительного предложения в косвенную речь, так же, как и в случае утвердительных предложений, необходимо соблюдать правила согласования времён и употреблять нужные по смыслу личные местоимения. Однако есть и некоторые особенности:

1. Придаточное предложение вводится либо с помощью вопросительного слова (если оно присутствует в вопросительном предложении), либо союзом **if**:

### He asked if he could help her.

*Он спросил, может ли он помочь ей.*

### He asked if he could help her.

*Он спросил у неё, может ли он помочь ей.*

2. Глагол может употребляться в косвенной речи как с дополнением, так и без него:

### прямая речь:

**Where** do you want to go?  
Can I help you?

### косвенная речь:

He asked her **where** she wanted to go.  
He asked her **if** he could help her.

В косвенной речи в придаточном предложении используется прямой порядок слов:

Where **do you want** to go?  
He asked her where **she wanted** to go.

## Exercise

Переведите следующие вопросительные предложения из прямой речи в косвенную. См. пример.

# Vocabulary **eleven**

Список слов, встречающихся в разделе 11.

<b>around the corner</b>	за углом	<b>going to</b>	
<b>as</b>		<b>Janet is going</b>	Джанет собирается
<b>as much (work)</b>	как можно больше (работы)	<b>to go...</b>	уйти...
<b>as possible</b>			
<b>bag</b>	сумка	<b>help</b>	помощь
<b>be</b>	быть	<b>huge</b>	огромный
<b>beach</b>	пляж		
<b>boulevard</b>	бульвар	<b>if</b>	если
<b>brother-in-law</b>	зять, свояк, деверь, шурин		
		<b>lie</b>	лежать
<b>could</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени</i>	<b>look forward to</b>	радостно ждать
	<i>от can</i>	<b>She's looking</b>	Ей не терпится...
		<b>forward to...</b>	
<b>decide (to)</b>	решать	<b>love (to)</b>	очень любить ( <i>что-то делать</i> )
<b>doorman</b>	швейцар		
<b>downtown</b>	центр города	<b>mountain</b>	гора
<b>driver</b>	водитель	<b>move</b>	переезжать
<b>especially</b>	особенно	<b>near</b>	у, возле
<b>every</b>		<b>necessary</b>	необходимо
<b>every year</b>	каждый год		
		<b>ocean</b>	океан
<b>fall</b>	осень		
<b>far</b>		<b>report</b>	отчёт
<b>not far from</b>	недалеко от	<b>a river</b>	река
<b>find</b>	находить		
<b>find out about</b>	разузнать о	<b>sailboat</b>	парусное судно, яхта
		<b>sand</b>	песок
<b>go</b>		<b>seashore</b>	морской берег
<b>go sailing/</b>	плавать под парусом/	<b>spring</b>	весна
<b>shopping</b>	делать покупки	<b>state</b>	государство, штат (в США)

<b>suitcase</b>	чемодан	<b>visit (her sister)</b>	посещать (свою сестру)
<b>summer</b>	лето	<b>want (to)</b>	хотеть ( <i>что-то делать</i> )
<b>Sure.</b>	Конечно.	<b>weekend</b>	выходные, уик-энд
<b>taxi stand</b>	стоянка такси	<b>winter</b>	зима
<b>tell</b>	говорить, рассказывать	<b>year</b>	год
<b>thank</b>	благодарить		
<b>town</b>	город		
<b>type</b>	печатать на машинке		

# Lesson **twelve**

## A PHONE CALL FOR MR. MORGAN *Телефонный звонок мистеру Моргану*

**constantly** — постоянно  
**The calls come into a central switchboard.**

*Звонки поступают на центральный коммутатор.*

Отметьте, что здесь употребляется предлог **into** (а не **in**), который передаёт движение по направлению к другому объекту, подчёркивая проникновение внутрь.

**The receptionist transfers them to the correct extension.**

*Телефонистка переключает их на соответствующий внутренний номер.*

**for example** — например

**The caller asked to speak to Mr. Morgan.**

*Абонент попросил соединить его (букв.: поговорить) с мистером Морганом.*

**push** — нажимать

**button** — кнопка

**dial** — набирать номер

**ring (rang)** — звонить (позвонил)

**I'm with United Electronics.**

*Я работаю в "Юнайтед Электроникс".*

**I'm with...** указывает

на принадлежность к той или иной компании, фирме.

**Is he in?** — Он на месте?

**Just a moment.** — Минутку.

**Would you hold on, please?**

*Не кладите трубку, пожалуйста.*

**intercom** — внутренний телефон

**buzz** — звонить

**be on the line** — быть на линии

**set up (an appointment)**

*назначать (встречу)*

**remember** — помнить

**Will you have any time on Friday?**

*У Вас будет время в пятницу?*

## A PHONE CALL FOR MR. MORGAN

### Recording

People are constantly calling Mr. Morgan's company. The calls come into a central switchboard. The receptionist answers these calls and transfers them to the correct extension. Each extension has a number. For example, Mr. Morgan's extension is 251.



One morning at about nine a call came in. The caller asked to speak to Mr. Morgan. The receptionist pushed a button and dialed extension 251. The phone rang on Janet's desk.

**Janet:** Mr. Morgan's office.

**Blake:** Good morning. I'd like to speak to John Morgan.

**Janet:** Who's calling, please?

**Blake:** This is James Blake. I'm with United Electronics. Mr. Morgan is expecting my call. Is he in?

**Janet:** Just a moment, Mr. Blake. Would you hold on, please?

Janet pushed a small button on her phone, and the intercom buzzed on Mr. Morgan's desk.

**Morgan:** Yes?

**Janet:** James Blake from United Electronics is on the line.

**Morgan:** Oh, yes. Thanks, Janet... Hello! Jim?

**Blake:** John, how are you? I'm calling to set up an appointment. When we spoke last week you asked me to call this morning. Do you remember?

**Morgan:** Oh, yes. That's right.

**Blake:** How about Friday? Will you have any time on Friday?

**Morgan:** Well, let's see... I'll be busy all afternoon, and I have a meeting at eleven. But if it's all right with you, I can see you around nine-thirty.

**Blake:** Sure, that's fine. I'll see you at nine-thirty on Friday.

**Morgan:** Good. See you then.  
Good-bye, Jim.

Mr. Morgan hung up and buzzed Janet.

**Janet:** Yes?

**Morgan:** Janet, would you put Mr. Blake down for an appointment on Friday morning? He'll be in at about nine-thirty.

**Janet:** You're not forgetting your meeting at eleven, are you?

**Morgan:** No, I'm not. The meeting with Blake won't last more than an hour. There'll be plenty of time.

**Janet:** OK, nine-thirty on Friday then ... James Blake. I'll put it on your calendar.

**Morgan:** Thanks, Janet. Oh, one more thing. I probably won't get into the office before eleven tomorrow. I have a doctor's appointment at nine-thirty.

**Janet:** You'll be in in the afternoon, won't you?

**Morgan:** Well, only until about two-thirty. At three o'clock I have a meeting with Henry Gibson. We have to go over some contracts.

**Janet:** Oh, yes. You wanted to take him out to dinner tomorrow evening, didn't you?

**Morgan:** That's right, we'll probably go directly from his office to the restaurant.



**I'll be busy.** — Я буду занят.  
**If it's all right with you.**  
Если Вас это устраивает.

**around (nine-thirty)** — около (половины десятого)

**See you then.** — Тогда увидимся.  
(Букв.: Тогда я Вас увижу.)

**Good-bye.** — До свидания.

**hang up** — повесить (трубку)

**Put Mr. Blake down for an appointment.**

Запишите, что у меня встреча с мистером Блэйком.

**You're not forgetting your meeting at eleven, are you?**

Вы ведь не забыли, что у Вас совещание в одиннадцать, не так ли?

В разделе 10 мы рассматривали грамматическую конструкцию типа **You're Mr. Morgan, aren't you?**, в которой главное предложение стояло в утвердительной форме, а за ним следовал краткий вопрос в отрицательной форме. В данном примере мы встречаемся с обратной ситуацией: главное предложение стоит в отрицательной форме, а краткий вопрос — в утвердительной: **You're not forgetting, are you?** В подобных конструкциях отрицание может употребляться только один раз либо в главном предложении, либо в кратком вопросе.

**won't last** — не продлится

**Won't** — сокращённая форма от **will not**.

**more then** — больше чем

**less then** — меньше чем

**There'll be plenty of time.**  
Будет много времени.

**OK... then...** — ладно... тогда...  
**probably** — возможно

**doctor's appointment** — приём у врача

**get into (the office)** — приходить в (офис) (Букв.: попасть)

## Action Questions

**Answer!** Will Mr. Morgan see Mr. Blake today?  
Will he see him today or on Friday?  
Will he see him in the afternoon?  
Will he see him in the afternoon or in the morning?  
The meeting will last for about an hour, right?  
**Excuse me!** How long will the meeting last?

Ещё раз обратите внимание на предлог **into**, обозначающий проникновение внутрь.

**You'll be in in the afternoon, won't you?** — *Вы ведь будете (на месте) после обеда, не так ли?*

Отметьте, что глагол в краткой части вопроса стоит в том же времени (в данном случае — в простом будущем), что и смысловый глагол в главном предложении.

**go over some contracts**

*просмотреть несколько контрактов*

**take him out to dinner**

*повести его на обед*



## Exercise

1. What's Mr. Morgan's extension?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What company is James Blake with?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Who does he want to speak to?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Did Janet ask James Blake to call back or to hold on?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Why did Mr. Blake call?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What time can Mr. Morgan see him on Friday?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Why can't he see him in the afternoon?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. What did he ask Janet to do after he hung up?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Did Janet put the appointment on your calendar or on Mr. Morgan's calendar?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Why won't Mr. Morgan be in until eleven o'clock tomorrow?  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Who does he have a meeting with tomorrow at three?  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. What is he going to do after the meeting?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## WILL YOU BE IN TOMORROW?

Usually Mr. Morgan **is** at the office.

Next week he **will be** at the office.

I	go
you	come
we	work
they	
he	goes
she	comes
it	works



I	} will	} go
you		
we		
they		
he	} won't	} come
she		
it		
		work
		etc.

Usually Janet

... *is* at the office during the day.

... *works* from nine to five.

... *goes* to work by bus.

... *isn't* at home before six.

... *doesn't work* on Saturday.

... *doesn't go* to work by train.

Will Janet be at the office tomorrow?

— Yes, *she will*.

— No, *she won't*.

When will she be at home?

— *She'll be* at home next weekend.

Next week Janet

... **will be** at the office during the day.

... **will work** from nine to five.

... **will go** to work by bus.

... **won't be** home before six.

... **won't work** on Saturday.

... **won't go** to work by train.

## WILL YOU BE IN TOMORROW?

В разделе 11 мы изучали, как образовывается одна из конструкций, с помощью которой в английском языке можно передать будущее время: **to be going** – инфинитив смыслового глагола. Теперь познакомимся с простым будущим временем. Оно образуется при помощи вспомогательного глагола **will** и инфинитива смыслового глагола: **We will be at home.**  
*Мы будем дома.*

Отметьте, что:

а. глагол **will** не требует вспомогательного глагола **do**.

**Will you be in tomorrow?**

*Вы будете на месте завтра?*

б. не принимает окончания **-s** в третьем лице единственного числа.

**She will buy a car.**

*Она купит машину.*

В разговорной речи вспомогательный глагол употребляется в сокращённой форме ...'ll (**I'll, you'll** и т.д.). В отрицательной форме – **won't** (**I will not – I won't**).

Простое будущее время, образованное при помощи **will**, соответствует в русском языке будущему времени глаголов как совершенного, так и несовершенного вида.

В данных упражнениях потренируемся в образовании будущего времени при помощи вспомогательного глагола **will**.

### Exercise A

Ответьте на оба вопроса одним предложением сначала в утвердительной, а затем в отрицательной форме. Употребляйте при этом простое будущее время. См. пример.



## Exercise A

*Example:* Will you be in New York? Will you see Mr. Morgan?

I'll be in New York, but I won't see Mr. Morgan.

1. Will Mr. Morgan go to Chicago? Will he take the train?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Will Mary take the bus? Will she get off at Main Street?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Will you come to the office? Will you bring your wife?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Will these people come to the meeting? Will they be early?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Will you visit me tonight? Will you stay for three hours?  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Exercise B

Замените глаголы в простом прошедшем времени глаголами в простом будущем времени. См. пример.



## Exercise B

*Example:* Mr. Morgan wasn't at the office last week.

Next week he **won't be** at the office, either.

1. Bill didn't call his office yesterday.  
Tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_, either.
2. This afternoon Mrs. Morgan went shopping.  
Next Saturday \_\_\_\_\_, again.
3. Last week I didn't go to the movies.  
Next week, \_\_\_\_\_, either.
4. Last summer Mr. Duval came to New York.  
Next fall \_\_\_\_\_, again.

## Recording

Later that morning Mr. Morgan buzzed Janet again.



Janet: Yes?

Morgan: Janet, I'd like to speak to David Wilson in San Diego. He's with Zenith Exports. I think they're on Pomona Boulevard.

Janet: No problem. I'll find out the number and buzz you when I have him on the line.

Since this was a long-distance call, Janet first looked in the front of the phone book to find the area code for San Diego. She found it easily: 714. But she still had to find out the number for Zenith Exports. She picked up the phone and dialed 714, then 555-1212 to get "Directory Assistance" for the San Diego area.

Operator: Directory Assistance. May I help you?

Janet: I'd like the number for Zenith Exports. They're in San Diego on Pomona Boulevard.

Operator: One moment, please... I have a Zenith Imports and Exports at 753 Pomona Boulevard.

Janet: That must be it. What number is that, please?

Operator: The number is 588—3941.

Janet: Thank you very much.

Operator: You're welcome.

**I think they're on Pomona Boulevard.**  
Я думаю, что их офис (букв.: они) находится на бульваре Помона.

**find out** — находить, выяснять

Предлог **out** в данном случае придаёт глаголу оттенок завершенности. Он употребляется, когда хотят сказать, что действие будет доведено до конца (иногда несмотря на связанные с этим трудности).

**since** — поскольку  
**in the front (of the phone book)**  
в начале телефонного справочника

**(area) code** — код (города, региона)

**easily** — легко

**Directory Assistance** — справочная служба

**area** — регион

**operator** — оператор

**a Zenith Imports and Exports**

Обратите внимание, что перед названием компании стоит неопределённый артикль. По-русски в таких случаях говорят *какая-то...*

**That must be it.**

*Это, должно быть, то, что нужно.*

Модальный глагол **must** соответствует русскому *должен* и (подобно **can**, **should** и **may**) является неправильным. Он может выражать либо долженствование, либо большую вероятность (почти полную уверенность).

**Janet checked her watch.**

*Джанет посмотрела на часы.*

*(Букв.: проверила)*

**she thought to herself** — она подумала  
**should be open** — должна быть открыта  
**by now** — к этому времени

**She could hear the phone ring at the other end.**

*Она слышала гудки (букв.: как звонит телефон) на другом конце (провода).*

Обратите внимание на употребление глагола **can** перед инфинитивом смыслового глагола со значением восприятия. В аналогичной ситуации в русском языке обычно употребляется только смысловый глагол:

**She could hear.** — Она слышала.

Кроме того, обратите внимание на порядок слов в данном предложении (так называемая инфинитивная конструкция). В таком предложении возможен лишь следующий порядок слов:

**She could hear/the phone/ring.**

**take a message** — принять сообщение

**return the call** — перезвонить

**I'll tell Mr. Wilson...** — Я скажу

*(об этом) мистеру Уилсону...*

**as soon as he gets in** — как только он придёт

Внимание! В придаточном предложении, которое присоединяется к главному при помощи союза **as soon as**, глагол употребляется в простом настоящем времени, хотя глагол в главном предложении имеет форму простого будущего времени:

**I'll tell him as soon as he gets in.**

*Я скажу ему (об этом), как только он придёт.*

Это же правило относится к придаточному предложению с союзом **when**:

**I'll give him the message when he arrives.**

*Я передам ему сообщение, когда он придёт.*

Janet checked her watch. It was noon. "It's three hours earlier in San Diego. That's nine o'clock California time," she thought to herself, "so Zenith should be open by now." Janet dialed the area code (714) and the number (588-3941). She could hear the phone ring at the other end.



**Receptionist:** Good morning. Zenith Imports and Exports.

**Janet:** Hello. I'd like to speak to Mr. David Wilson.

**Receptionist:** One moment, please. I'll see if he's in... I'm sorry, Mr. Wilson isn't here yet. May I take a message?

**Janet:** Yes, please. I'm calling for John Morgan at Superior Products in New York. Would you please ask Mr. Wilson to return the call?

**Receptionist:** Certainly. May I have your number, please?

**Janet:** Yes. That's area code 212, and the number is 654-8359.

**Receptionist:** Thank you. I'll tell Mr. Wilson as soon as he gets in.

**Janet:** Good! Mr. Morgan will be in the office all afternoon. Mr. Wilson can call back anytime before five o'clock.

**Receptionist:** Fine. I'll give him the message when he arrives.

**Janet:** Thank you very much. Good-bye.

## Action Questions

**Answer!**

Was Mr. Wilson in when Janet called?

Did Janet ask the receptionist to give him a message?

Will the receptionist give him the message next week?

She'll give him the message when he gets in, right?

**Excuse me!**

When will she give him the message?

She'll tell him as soon as he arrives, right?

Will she ask him to return Mr. Morgan's call?

**Excuse me!**

What will she ask him to do?



## Exercise

1. Who did Mr. Morgan want to speak to in San Diego?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What company is Mr. Wilson with?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Where did Janet find the area code for San Diego?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Who did she call to find out the number for Zenith Exports?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What time is it in California when it's noon in New York?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What did Janet dial first? And then?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. Did she speak to the operator or the receptionist at Zenith?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. What did the receptionist say when she answered the phone?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. Was Mr. Wilson in yet?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. Did Janet give the receptionist the address or the phone number for Superior Products?  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. When will the receptionist give Mr. Wilson the message?  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. When can Mr. Wilson call back?  
\_\_\_\_\_

Не забывайте про различия во временных формах глаголов, которые используются в подобных предложениях в русском и английском языках.

**anytime** — в любое время  
**fine** — ладно, хорошо

## Exercise

Дополните приведённые сложные предложения глаголами в будущем времени (в главном предложении) или в настоящем времени (в придаточном предложении, которое присоединяется к главному союзом **when**).



## Exercise

When **will** Mr. Wilson **call** Mr. Morgan?  
— He'll **call** him when he **gets** in.

Fill in the correct form of the verb in parentheses.

Example: I'll give him the message when he comes in. (*come*)

1. Janet will find out the area code when she \_\_\_\_\_ in the phone book. (*look*)
2. She'll call Zenith when she \_\_\_\_\_ their number. (*find out*)
3. She'll buzz Mr. Morgan when she \_\_\_\_\_ them on the line. (*have*)
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ them when it's nine o'clock in California. (*call*)
5. She'll ask for Mr. Wilson when the receptionist \_\_\_\_\_ the phone. (*answer*)
6. The receptionist \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Wilson the message when he gets in. (*give*)
7. Mr. Wilson will return the call when he \_\_\_\_\_. (*arrive*)
8. Janet will be at her desk when he \_\_\_\_\_ the call. (*return*)
9. She \_\_\_\_\_ the phone when it rings. (*pick up*)
10. Mr. Morgan \_\_\_\_\_ to Mr. Wilson when he calls. (*speak*)

## ARE THERE ANY MESSAGES?

The next day Mr. Morgan had a doctor's appointment in the morning. Although the appointment was for nine-thirty, he didn't get to see the doctor until ten-thirty. His appointment lasted over an hour, so he decided to go directly to lunch without stopping at the office.

Before leaving the doctor's office, he decided to call Janet to see if there were any messages. He picked up the receiver and dialed the number.

*Receptionist:* Good morning. Superior Products.

*Morgan:* Extension 251, please...

*Receptionist:* One moment, please...

The phone rang on Janet's desk.

*Janet:* Mr. Morgan's office.

*Morgan:* Hello? Janet? It's John Morgan.

*Janet:* Oh, yes, Mr. Morgan.

*Morgan:* I just wanted to tell you I won't be in this morning and to find out if there are any messages.

*Janet:* No, it was a very quiet morning.

*Morgan:* Good. Oh, by the way, did you make a dinner reservation for Henry Gibson and me for this evening?

*Janet:* No, I didn't.

*Morgan:* Would you mind taking care of it? Make the reservation for seven o'clock.

*Janet:* Where would you like to go?



## ARE THERE ANY MESSAGES?

*Есть какие-нибудь сообщения?*

**although** — *хотя*

**get to see** — *увидеться*

Ещё один пример употребления глагольного выражения **get to** с инфинитивом глагола (букв.: *прийти, чтобы увидеть*).  
**without stopping at the office**  
*не заходя в офис*

**before leaving the doctor's office** —  
*перед выходом из кабинета врача*

Заметьте, что в английском языке после предлогов (кроме **to**) употребляется причастие настоящего времени (с окончанием **-ing**), а не существительное или неопределённая форма глагола (инфинитив), как в русском языке.

**to see if there were any messages**

*чтобы посмотреть, нет ли каких-нибудь сообщений*

**receiver** — *трубка*

**quiet (morning)** — *тихое (утро)*

**by the way** — *между прочим, кстати*

**make a dinner reservation**

*заказать столик в ресторане*

**Would you mind taking care of it?**

*Вы не против заняться этим?*

Выражение **would you mind...**

с глаголом **mind** (*возражать*) употребляется, чтобы вежливо попросить кого-либо сделать что-либо.

Обратите внимание, что после этой конструкции также используется причастие настоящего времени, а не инфинитив глагола.

**Henry enjoys eating Italian food.**

*Генри очень любит итальянскую кухню.  
(Букв.: любит есть итальянскую пищу.)*

**Don't worry.**

*Не беспокойтесь.*

**stop by** – зайти в, прийти в

**White Pages** – “белые страницы”

*(раздел в телефонном справочнике, где абоненты размещены в алфавитном порядке)*

**under “F”** – на букву “Ф”

**Finding the number wasn't easy.**

*Было нелегко найти нужный номер.*

Обратите внимание на эту характерную для английского языка конструкцию, где также используется причастие настоящего времени.

**turn to** – обратиться к

**Yellow Pages** – “Жёлтые страницы”

*(телефонный справочник, где абоненты размещены по роду занятий, производимой продукции или оказываемым услугам)*

**list** – размещать в списке

**business(es)** – компания(-и),

фирма(-ы)

**by product or service**

*по продукции или услугам*

**real estate** – недвижимость



**Morgan:**

Well, I know Henry enjoys eating Italian food. There's a nice Italian restaurant on Third Avenue.

I remember eating there with Mrs. Morgan a few weeks ago. I can't remember the exact name. It's Fallini's, or Falloni's, or...

**Janet:**

Don't worry. I'll find out. I'll take care of it.

**Morgan:**

Thanks, Janet. I'll stop by the office after lunch.

After hanging up, Janet opened the phone book and looked in the White Pages under “F”. Finding the number wasn't easy. She didn't find anything under *Fallini's* or *Falloni's*. Then she turned to the Yellow Pages. (The Yellow Pages list businesses by product or service.)

Janet looked under “R” in the Yellow Pages to find *Restaurants*. “Radios... Real Estate... Records... Restaurants. There it is: *Fellini's* (with an 'e')! It's at 847 Third Avenue.”

Janet picked up the phone and made a dinner reservation for two.

## Action Questions

**Answer!**

Did Mr. Morgan make a dinner reservation?

Did he ask Janet to make a reservation for him?

**Excuse me!**

What did he ask her to do?

Did he ask her to make it for six or for seven o'clock?

Does Mr. Gibson enjoy eating Italian food?

Is Mr. Morgan going to take him to an Italian restaurant?

He's going to take him to an Italian restaurant because he enjoys eating Italian food, right?

**Excuse me!**

Why is he going to take him to an Italian restaurant?



## Exercise

1. How long did Mr. Morgan's doctor's appointment last?

---

2. What did Mr. Morgan decide to do before leaving the doctor's office?

---

3. What did he want to find out?

---

4. Were there any messages?

---

5. Did Janet make the dinner reservation?

---

6. Who's going to take care of making the reservation?

---

7. Why did Mr. Morgan want to go to an Italian restaurant?

---

8. Could he remember the name of the restaurant?

---

9. When will he stop by the office?

---

10. What did Janet do after she hung up?

---

11. Where did she find the name of the restaurant?

---

12. How many people did she make a reservation for?

---

## LEARNING ENGLISH IS EASY

Как Вы уже убедились, в английском языке очень распространено употребление причастий настоящего времени. Такие причастия часто имеют свойства существительного, образованного от глагола. В предложении они могут выполнять функции:

— подлежащего:

**Learning English is easy.**

*Изучать английский язык легко.*

— дополнения:

**He doesn't mind working on Sunday.**

*Он не против того, чтобы поработать в воскресенье.*

— обстоятельства:

**We said good-bye before leaving.**

*Мы попрощались (букв.: сказали "до свидания") перед уходом.*

### Exercise

Составьте из двух предложений одно, употребляя причастие настоящего времени. См. пример.

## LEARNING ENGLISH IS EASY

It's easy to **learn** English.

**Learning** English is easy.

He **works** on Sundays. He doesn't mind.

He doesn't mind **working** on Sundays

We said good-bye. Then we **left**.

We said good-bye **before leaving**.



### Exercise

*Example:* I go to the theater. I like it.

I like **going to the theater**.

1. Janet doesn't **work late on Friday**. She doesn't like it.

Janet doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_.

2. I'll **see you tomorrow**. I'm looking forward to it.

I'm looking forward to \_\_\_\_\_.

3. It's no problem to **find out John's phone number**.

\_\_\_\_\_ is no problem.

4. Mrs. Morgan **goes shopping**. She enjoys it.

Mrs. Morgan enjoys \_\_\_\_\_.

5. It's important to **arrive early**.

\_\_\_\_\_ is important.

6. Mr. Morgan **works hard**. He doesn't mind.

Mr. Morgan doesn't mind \_\_\_\_\_.

# I THINK IT WAS MR. GIBSON

After finishing lunch, Mr. Morgan went back to the office.

**Morgan:** I'm back, Janet. Did anyone call?

**Janet:** There are some messages on your desk. And, oh, yes, someone called a couple of minutes ago, but he didn't leave his name. I think it was Mr. Gibson.

**Morgan:** OK. I'll call him back right away. It's probably about our meeting this afternoon. We're working on an important contract. I hope there isn't going to be a problem.

**Janet:** I don't think so. He probably just wanted to confirm the time of the appointment. Oh, about your dinner reservation. I know you wanted to eat at seven, but I had to make the reservation for eight-thirty. That was the only time available.

**Morgan:** That's all right. I guess they're busy tonight. Anything else?

**Janet:** No, I guess not. Everything else is on your desk.

**Morgan:** Good. I'll call Gibson now, and then I'll look through the other messages. Thank you.



# I THINK IT WAS MR. GIBSON

*Я думаю, это был мистер Гибсон*

**leave his name** — *оставить своё имя*

**right away** — *сейчас же*

**We're working on an important contract.**

*Мы работаем над важным контрактом.*

**hope** — *надеяться*

**I don't think so.**

*Я так не думаю. Мне так не кажется.*

**confirm** — *подтверждать*

**about** — *что касается...*

**the only time available**

*единственное свободное*

*(букв.: доступное) время*

**guess** — *угадывать; здесь: думать,*

*предполагать*

**everything else** — *всё остальное*

**look through** — *просмотреть*

## Action Questions

**Answer!** Did Mr. Morgan go home after finishing lunch?  
Did he go home or did he go back to the office?  
Did he speak to Janet?  
Did he ask her if anyone called?

**Excuse me!** What did he ask her?  
Were there some messages on his desk?

**Excuse me!** Did Janet tell him there were some messages on his desk?  
What did she tell him?



## Exercise

1. When did Mr. Morgan go back to the office?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Where did Janet put his messages?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. How long ago did someone call?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Did he leave his name?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Who does Janet think it was?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Will Mr. Morgan call Mr. Gibson back tomorrow or right away?  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. What are Mr. Morgan and Mr. Gibson working on?  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. What does Janet think Mr. Gibson wanted?  
\_\_\_\_\_
9. What time did Mr. Morgan want to eat dinner?  
\_\_\_\_\_
10. What time did Janet make the reservation for?  
\_\_\_\_\_
11. Why did she have to make it for eight-thirty?  
\_\_\_\_\_
12. What is Mr. Morgan going to do after calling Mr. Gibson?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

- **I think** he's busy.
- **I guess** he's going to be late.
- **I know** he's coming.
- **I hope** he won't forget.

Is he going to come?

- **I think so.**                    — **I don't think so.**
- **I hope so.**                    — **I hope not.**
- **I guess so.**                    — **I guess not.**



### Exercise

Example: Will Mr. Morgan be in tomorrow? (*think*)

*I think so.*

*I don't think so.*

1. Is Janet going to get here on time? (*guess*)

---

---

2. Will Bill stay for dinner? (*hope*)

---

---

3. Is Henry going to be at the meeting? (*think*)

---

---

4. Are you going out to lunch soon? (*guess*)

---

---

## WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Глаголы **think**, **hope** и **guess**, которые можно перевести как *думать*, *надеяться*, *предполагать*, выражают различные оттенки мнения говорящего.

Обратите внимание на особенности их употребления в устойчивых выражениях и неполных ответах, которые приведены в данной таблице.

### Exercise

Ответьте на вопросы, употребляя приведённые в скобках глаголы сначала в утвердительной, а затем в отрицательной форме. См. пример.

**on time** — *вовремя*

## Exercise

Составьте полные ответы на вопросы по приведённым неполным ответам. См. примеры.



## Exercise

*Examples:* Is that Mr. Phillips? **I don't think so.**

***I don't think it's Mr. Phillips.***

---

Will Mr. Blake arrive on time? **I hope so.**

***I hope he'll arrive on time.***

---

1. Did Mr. Wilson return the call? **I guess so.**

---

2. Did Mr. Morgan remember to make a reservation? **I guess not.**

---

3. Will Mr. Morgan get to the restaurant by car? **I think so.**

---

4. Will the restaurant be crowded? **I hope not.**

---

5. Will Mr. Morgan and Mr. Gibson enjoy their meal? **I hope so.**

---

6. Are they going to talk about the contract at the restaurant? **I think so.**

---

7. Does Mr. Morgan go out to dinner often? **I guess so.**

---

8. Will Mr. Morgan be in the office tomorrow morning? **I don't think so.**

---

# Vocabulary **twelve**

Слова, встречающиеся в разделе 12.

<b>about</b>	что касается...	<b>correct extension</b>	соответствующий внутренний (дополнительный) номер
<b>all right</b> If it's all right with you...	Если Вас это устраивает...	<b>dial (a number)</b>	набирать (номер)
<b>although</b>	хотя	<b>directly</b>	прямо, непосредственно
<b>anytime</b>	в любое время	<b>Directory Assistance</b>	справочная служба
<b>area</b>	регион	<b>doctor</b>	врач
<b>around (nine-thirty)</b>	около (половины десятого)	<b>doctor's appointment</b>	приём у врача
<b>as soon as</b>	как только	<b>doctor's office</b>	кабинет врача
<b>available</b> the only time available	доступный единственное свободное время	<b>easily</b>	легко
<b>businesses</b>	компании, фирмы	<b>easy</b>	лёгкий
<b>button</b>	кнопка	<b>end</b>	
<b>buzz</b> the intercom buzzed	зазвонил внутренний телефон	<b>at the other end (of the phone)</b>	на другом конце (провода)
<b>Mr. Morgan buzzed Janet.</b>	Мистер Морган вызвал Джанет (по телефону).	<b>exact</b>	точный
<b>by now</b>	к этому времени	<b>extension</b>	дополнительный номер
<b>by the way</b>	между прочим	<b>Fine.</b>	Ладно. Хорошо.
<b>call</b>	телефонный звонок	<b>food</b>	пища, еда
<b>caller</b>	абонент	<b>for example</b>	например
<b>central switchboard</b>	центральный коммутатор	<b>forget</b>	забывать
<b>check</b> Janet checked her watch.	Джанет посмотрела на часы.	<b>found</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени</i> <b>of find</b>
<b>code</b>	код	<b>front</b>	
<b>come into</b> calls come into...	звонки поступают на...	<b>in the front (of the phone book)</b>	в начале (телефонного справочника)
<b>confirm</b>	подтверждать	<b>get</b>	
<b>constantly</b>	постоянно	<b>get in</b>	приходить, попадать
<b>contract</b>	контракт	<b>get into (the office)</b>	приходить (в офис)
		<b>get to see (the doctor)</b>	увидеться (с врачом)
		<b>go over (some contracts)</b>	просмотреть (несколько контрактов)
		<b>good-bye</b>	до свидания

<b>guess</b>	угадывать; думать, предполагать	<b>must</b> <b>That must be it.</b>	Должно быть, это то, что нужно.
<b>hang up</b>	вешать (трубку)	<b>operator</b>	оператор
<b>hear</b>	слышать	<b>OK</b>	Ладно. Хорошо. О'кей.
<b>Hold on, please!</b>	Не кладите трубку, пожалуйста!	<b>page</b>	страница
<b>hung up</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени</i> <i>от hang up</i>	<b>phone book</b>	телефонный справочник
<b>if</b>	если	<b>phone call</b>	телефонный звонок
<b>in</b>		<b>plenty (of time)</b>	много (времени)
<b>Is he in?</b>	Он на месте?	<b>probably</b>	возможно
<b>intercom</b>	внутренний телефон	<b>push (a button)</b>	нажимать (кнопку)
<b>leave (his name)</b>	оставить (своё имя)	<b>put Mr. Blake down</b>	запишите, что у меня
<b>less (than)</b>	меньше (чем)	<b>for an appointment</b>	встреча с мистером Блэйком
<b>line</b>		<b>quiet</b>	тихий
<b>be on the line</b>	быть на линии	<b>rang</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени</i> <i>от ring</i>
<b>list businesses</b> <b>(by product or services)</b>	размещать компании (по их продукции или услугам)	<b>real estate</b>	недвижимость
<b>long-distance call</b>	междугородный звонок	<b>receiver</b>	телефонная трубка
<b>look through</b> <b>(the messages)</b>	просмотреть (сообщения)	<b>receptionist</b>	телефонист(ка)
<b>make a reservation</b>	сделать заказ	<b>remember</b>	помнить
<b>message</b>	сообщение	<b>reservation</b>	заказ
<b>mind</b>		<b>return (a call)</b>	перезвонить
<b>I don't mind</b>	Я не возражаю.	<b>right away</b>	сейчас же
<b>moment</b>	момент	<b>ring</b>	звонить
<b>more (than)</b>	больше (чем)	<b>see if there are messages</b>	чтобы посмотреть, нет ли сообщений
<b>morning</b>	утром	<b>set up (an appointment)</b>	назначить (встречу)
<b>in the morning</b>	утром	<b>should be open</b>	должно быть открыто
		<b>since</b>	поскольку; с тех пор как

<b>so</b>			
<b>I don't think so.</b>	Я так не думаю. Мне так не кажется.		
<b>stop at the office</b>	прийти в офис		
<b>stop by the office</b>	зайти в офис		
<b>switchboard</b>	коммутатор		
<b>take a message</b>	принять сообщение		
<b>take him out to dinner</b>	повести его на обед		
<b>than</b>			
<b>more/less than</b>	больше/меньше чем		
<b>then</b>			
<b>OK... then...</b>	Ладно... тогда...		
<b>See you then.</b>	Тогда увидимся.		
<b>think</b>			
<b>I don't think so.</b>	Я так не думаю. Мне так не кажется		
<b>thought</b>	<i>форма прошедшего времени</i> <i>от think</i>		
<b>she thought to herself</b>	она подумала		
		<b>time</b>	
		<b>a long time</b>	долго
		<b>on time</b>	вовремя
		<b>transfer (the call)</b>	переключить (звонок)
		<b>turn to (the Yellow Pages)</b>	обратиться (к справочнику "Жёлтые страницы")
		<b>under "F"</b>	на букву "Ф"
		<b>watch</b>	часы
		<b>with</b>	
		<b>I'm with United Electronics.</b>	Я работаю в "Юнайтед Электроникс".
		<b>work on (a contract)</b>	работать (над контрактом)
		<b>worry</b>	
		<b>Don't worry.</b>	Не беспокойтесь.

# KEY TO WRITTEN EXERCISES AND ACTION QUESTIONS

## Action Questions 2\*

- No, it's not.
- Yes, it is.
- No, it's not.
- No, it's not.
- It's Mrs. Morgan.
- It's Mr. Morgan.

**\*NOTE:** The numbers refer to pages  
Action Questions 2 are on page 2,  
Exercise 3 is on page 3, etc.

## Exercise 3

1. Yes, it is. 2. No, it's not. 3. It's Mr. Tanaka. 4. No, it's not.  
5. It's Mrs. Morgan. 6. It's Miss Santos. 7. No, it's not.  
8. No, it's not. 9. It's Mrs. Schulz. 10. It's Mr. Duval.

## Action Questions 4

- Yes, it is.
- No, it's not.
- No, it's not.
- It's a telephone.
- It's a dog.

## Action Questions 6

- Yes, she is.
- No, she's not.
- She's from New York.
- No, he's not.
- He's from Tokyo.

## Exercise 6

1. No, she's not. 2. She's from Berlin. 3. He's from New York.  
4. Mr. Duval is. 5. He's from Tokyo.

## Exercise 7

1. What nationality is he? 2. What city is he from?  
3. What's Paris? 4. What country is Berlin in? 5. Who's from New York?  
6. What nationality is he? 7. What country is Caracas in? 8. What's Venezuela?  
9. What city is Miss López from? 10. What nationality is she?

## Exercise 8

1. Yes, it is. 2. No, it's not. 3. It's a city in England.  
4. Mr. Phillips is. 5. She's from Rio (de Janeiro). 6. Yes, it is.  
7. No, it's not. 8. It's an American city. 9. Yes, he is.  
10. She's from New York, too. 11. She's from Caracas.  
12. It's in Venezuela.

**Exercise 9**

six – four – ten – five  
 zero – two – seven  
 one – nine – eight – three

**Action Questions 12**

– *Yes, it is.*  
 – *Yes, it is.*  
 – *No, it's not.*  
 – *It's in Rome.*  
 – *The plane is.*  
 – *The car is.*

**Action Questions 14**

– *No, it's not.*  
 – *It's a typewriter.*  
 – *No, it's not.*  
 – *It's on it.*  
 – *It's under it.*  
 – *It's on the small table.*  
 – *It's on the big table.*

**Exercise 14**

1. It's on the desk.    2. The chair is.  
 3. It's on the table.    4. It's on the desk.

**Exercise 15**

fourteen	nineteen
eleven	seventeen
sixteen	thirteen
twelve	eighteen
twenty	fifteen

**Action Questions 20**

– *No, you're not.*  
 – *You're sitting in your car.*  
 – *No, it's not.*  
 – *It's on his desk.*  
 – *No, she's not.*  
 – *She's sitting in her chair.*

**Exercise 20**

1. No, you're not.    2. You're sitting in your car.  
 3. No, he's not.    4. He's standing next to his chair.

**Exercise 21**

1. It's your picture.    2. It's her chair.    3. It's her car.  
 4. It's your teacher.    5. It's his desk.    6. It's my television.  
 7. It's his bicycle.    8. It's her dog.

**Action**  
**Questions 22**

- *He's a boy.*
- *No, he's not.*
- *He's his son.*
- *She's his daughter.*
- *She's her mother.*
- *Yes, she is.*
- *Mr. Morgan is.*

**Exercise 23**

1. ... wife. She's his wife.    2. ... son. He's her son.
3. ... father. He's her father.    4. ... sister. She's his sister.
5. ... husband. He's her husband.

**Action**  
**Questions 25**

- *Yes, she is.*
- *No, she's not.*
- *She's Mr. Morgan's secretary.*
- *No, she's not.*
- *Mr. Morgan is.*
- *No, he's not.*
- *He's standing in front of her.*

**Exercise 25**

1. No, he's not.    2. He's standing in front of it.
3. The door is.    4. It's in front of her.    5. It's behind her.

**Exercise 26A**

1. Linda's mother is from England.    2. My son's car is from Germany.
3. Joan's husband's office is very big.    4. My secretary's name is Janet Brown.
5. Bill's daughter's bicycle is red.

**Exercise 26B**

1. ... he's standing next to me    2. ... she's sitting next to him
3. ... he's standing next to you    4. ... he's standing next to her

**Action**  
**Questions 27**

- *Yes, he is.*
- *No, he's not.*
- *He's a policeman.*
- *He's on the sidewalk.*
- *No, he's not.*
- *He's in a store.*
- *No, he's not.*
- *He's a salesclerk.*

**Exercise 28A**

1. No, he's not.    2. He's a waiter.    3. He's standing in a restaurant.
4. No, she's not.    5. She's in the store.

**Exercise 28B**

1. in front of 2. small 3. boy 4. behind 5. next to

**Exercise 29**

1. Who is he sitting next to? 2. Who is she sitting in front of?  
3. Who is it in front of? 4. What is he standing next to?  
5. Who is he standing behind? 6. What is he sitting on?

**Exercise 30**

1. Sixty-three and twelve is seventy-five. 2. Thirty-four and seven is forty-one. 3. Seventy-five and twenty-one is ninety-six. 4. Forty-nine and thirty-two is eighty-one. 5. Sixty-two and fifteen is seventy-seven. 6. Fifty-nine and thirty-five is ninety-four.

**Exercise 35**

1. The bottles are on the table. 2. The cigars are next to the ashtray. 3. The buses are in the street. 4. The cities are in Japan.

**Action Questions 37**

– *No, there aren't.*  
– *There are three men in the picture.*  
– *There are three women in the picture, too.*  
– *No, there aren't.*  
– *There are two girls in the picture.*  
– *There's only one boy.*  
– *There are three children in all.*

**Exercise 37**

1. There are three men in the picture. 2. Yes, there are.  
3. There's only one. 4. No, there aren't. 5. There are two girls in the picture. 6. There are three children in all.  
7. There's only one child under the table. 8. There are nine people in the picture.

**Action Questions 38**

– *Yes, there are.*  
– *There are five glasses in the picture.*  
– *No, there aren't.*  
– *There aren't any bottles of milk on the counter.*  
– *There are two glasses on the counter.*

**Exercise 39A**

1. There's some beer in that bottle. 2. There are some matches in this box. 3. There are some newspapers over here. 4. There's some water in that white cup. 5. There are some cigarettes in that pack.

**Exercise 39B**

1. Is there any milk in that pitcher? 2. Are there any cars in the street? 3. Are there any books on Mr. Morgan's chair?
4. Is there any tea in Mary's glass? 5. Are there any people in that bus?

**Exercise 40**

This **is** a restaurant. Look at the table! There **are** two bottles on the table. Look at the big bottle! **Is** there **any** wine in it? Yes, there **is**. There's **some** wine in the big bottle. And what about the small bottle? There's **isn't any** wine in the small one.

Look at the glasses! There's **some** wine in the glasses in front of the women, but there **isn't any** wine in the glass in front of the man.

**Are** there **some** cups on the table, too? Yes, there **are**.

There **are** three cups on the table. **Is** there **any** coffee in the cups? No, there **isn't**.

**Are** there **any** people in this restaurant? Yes, there **are**. There are **some** customers sitting at the table, and there are **some** customers standing next to the door. **Is** there a waiter, too? Yes, there **is**. **Is** he sitting or standing? He's standing. Look! Three people **are** sitting, and four people **are** standing. There **are** seven people in this picture in all. **Are** there **any** children in this picture? No, there **aren't**. There **aren't any** children in this restaurant.

**Exercise 41**

1. seven hundred and fifty-five 2. a hundred and seventy-three 3. two hundred and forty-seven
4. a hundred and eleven 5. five hundred and sixty-nine

**Exercise 42**

1. How much is the cassette player? It's thirty-six dollars and nineteen cents. (It's thirty-six nineteen.) 2. How much is the calculator? It's a hundred and five dollars. 3. How much is the desk? It's five hundred and seventy-four dollars and sixty-three cents. 4. How much is the typewriter? It's seven hundred and eight dollars and fifty-four cents.

**Exercise 45**

1. The map on the wall is big. 2. The dog next to the window is black. 3. The children in the street are Peter and Mary. 4. The cassettes on the table are from Germany. 5. The boy standing behind Mrs. Morgan is Peter. 6. The two men sitting over there are from France. 7. The waiter standing in front of me is Italian. 8. The people sitting in the car are the Duvals.

**Exercise 46A**

1. These planes are at the airport. 2. Those children aren't American. 3. The secretaries aren't at the office.

**Exercise 46B**

1. Are these cars Japanese? 2. Are those women standing? 3. Are those cities in Italy? 4. Are these children sitting at the table?

**Exercise 47A**

1. These are French women. 2. Those are small radios. 3. These are black telephones. 4. These are Japanese cars.

**Exercise 47B**

1. There's milk in that bottle. 2. There are matches in that box. 3. There are cigarettes in this pack. 4. There's coffee in this cup.

**Exercise 48A**

1. It's your car. 2. It's her cassette. 3. It's his office. 4. It's her chair. 5. It's my magazine.

**Exercise 48B**

1. Janet's desk is brown. 2. My son's bicycle is in the garage. 3. Mrs. Duval's husband is from Paris. 4. My teacher's car is small. 5. Mr. Morgan's secretary's name is Janet.

**Exercise 49**

1. The ones on the wall are. 2. The one behind the table is. 3. The ones in the garage are. 4. The one over there is. 5. The ones next to the car are.

**Exercise 50****Exercise 51A**

1. an 2. a 3. an 4. an 5. a

**Exercise 51B**

1. The car is Japanese.
2. The boy is standing at the bus stop.
3. The newspaper is black and white.
4. The woman is from Germany.
5. The brown dog is sitting next to the door.

**Exercise 52A**

1. Yes, it is.
2. Yes, he is.
3. No, it's not.
4. It's Mrs. Schulz.
5. Yes, she is.

**Exercise 52B**

1. Yes, she is. No, she's not.
2. Yes, it is. No, it's not.
3. Yes, it is. No, it's not.
4. Yes, she is. No, she's not.
5. Yes, it is. No, it's not.

**Exercise 53A**

1. He's not at the airport.
2. I'm not French.
3. It's not brown.
4. You're not standing.

**Exercise 53B**

1. It's a city, but not a German city.
2. It's a bottle, but not a bottle of wine.
3. I'm sitting, but not on the floor.
4. They're big, but not red.
5. He's in his office, but not at his desk.

**Exercise 54**

1. her
2. me
3. it
4. her
5. you
6. him
7. me
8. it

**Exercise 55**

1. Who's this?
2. How much is the magazine?
3. What country is Mr. Duval from?
4. What nationality is Mr. Morgan?
5. How many people are there at the bus stop?
6. Whose office is this?
7. What kind of plane is that?
8. What country is Mrs. Morgan in?

**Review****Test 56-7**

1. b
2. a
3. c
4. c
5. b
6. b
7. a
8. b
9. a
10. b
11. b
12. b
13. a
14. b
15. c
16. a
17. b
18. a
19. c
20. c

**Action Questions 59**

- *No, she's not.*
- *She's standing.*
- *She's speaking.*
- *No, she's not. She's speaking to the passengers.*
- *They're listening to her.*

**Exercise 59**

1. He's listening to her.
2. They're listening to us.
3. He's listening to them.
4. You're listening to me.

**Exercise 60A**

1. at
2. to
3. from
4. by
5. of

**Exercise 60B**

1. listening
2. speaking
3. reading
4. writing
5. going
6. drinking
7. sitting
8. eating
9. looking
10. coming

**?**  
**Action**  
**Questions 61**

- Yes, he is.
- No, he's not.
- He's speaking to his secretary.
- No, he's not.
- He's in London.
- He's calling his secretary.
- He's calling 863-9527.

 **Exercise 61**

1. two, eight, three - four, six, seven, nine
2. six, one, two - four, eight, seven, three
3. three, two, seven - one, eight, three, four

**?**  
**Action**  
**Questions 63**

- Yes, there is.
- There's something on the desk.
- There's an ashtray on the desk.
- Yes, there is.
- There's someone next to the car.
- No, there isn't.
- There isn't anyone in the car.

 **Exercise 63**

1. There isn't anything under the table.
2. There isn't anyone in front of the bus.
3. There isn't anything on Mr. Morgan's chair.
4. There isn't anyone on the train.
5. There isn't anything next to the desk.

 **Exercise 64**

This is Mr. Morgan's office in New York. Is Mr. Morgan in his office? No, he's not. Who's in Mr. Morgan's office? There isn't **anyone** in his office.

Look at the table in Mr. Morgan's office. Is there a book on the table? No, there isn't. Is there a magazine? No, there isn't a magazine, either. Is there **anything** on the table? Yes, there is. There's **something** on the table. It's a newspaper. Is there **anything** next to the newspaper? No, there isn't. There isn't **anything** next to it.

Now look at Janet's office. Is there a newspaper on Janet's desk, too? No, there isn't. Is there **anything** on her desk? Yes, there is. There's **something** on her desk. It's her typewriter.

Is Mr. Morgan in Janet's office? No, he's not. Is there **anyone** in Janet's office? Yes, there is. There's **someone** in her office. Who's in Janet's office? Janet is, of course!

**?**  
**Action**  
**Questions 67**

- Yes, it is.
- No, it's not.
- Thursday is.
- Wednesday is.
- No, it's not.
- It's after Monday.
- Wednesday is.

**?**  
**Action**  
**Questions 68**

- Yes, there are.
- There are four weeks in a month.
- No, it's not.
- Tomorrow is Thursday.
- The day after tomorrow is Friday.
- Yes, it was.
- No, it wasn't.
- The day before yesterday was Monday.

 **Exercise 69**

1. Today is Monday.
2. Tomorrow is Tuesday.
3. Yesterday was Sunday.
4. The day before yesterday was Saturday.
5. The day after tomorrow is Wednesday.

 **Exercise 71**

1. What does Mrs. Duval have?
2. How many brothers does Miss López have?
3. What color telephone does the secretary have?
4. What kind of bicycle does Mr. Phillips have?
5. How much coffee does the store have?
6. Where does Mr. O'Connor have his car?

 **Exercise 74**

1. a. sits b. drinks c. smoke, smokes
2. a. ... sit at my big desk b. ... drink five cups of coffee a day
- c. ... don't smoke cigars, but I smoke cigarettes

 **Exercise 75A**

1. He doesn't drink wine, either.
2. You listen to the radio, too.
3. I don't speak Japanese, either.
4. We smoke cigarettes, too.

 **Exercise 75B**

1. ... read newspapers, but I don't read magazines
2. ... drinks beer, but she doesn't drink wine
3. ... smoke cigarettes, but you don't smoke cigars
4. ... has a car, but he doesn't have a truck

**?**  
**Action**  
**Questions 76**

- *No, she's not.*
- *She's going to a concert.*
- *That's right, she's going to a concert with Carlo.*
- *No, she doesn't.*
- *That's right, sometimes she goes to the movies.*
- *She stays home on Sunday evening.*

 **Exercise 77A**

1. When Mr. Morgan gets to the office, he has a cup of coffee.
2. When the children get home, they have a glass of milk.
3. When the concert is over, the people go home.
4. When I'm in Paris, I speak French.

 **Exercise 77B**

1. gets up
2. leaves
3. late
4. gets dressed
5. after

 **Exercise 78**

1. Carlo always drives a small car.
2. I sometimes eat dinner at that restaurant.
3. The movie is usually over at nine o'clock.
4. Peter is sometimes in bed at ten o'clock.
5. The dresses in this store are never cheap.

 **Exercise 79**

1. They eat a lot of spaghetti in Italy.
2. They drive big cars in Texas.
3. They write from right to left in Egypt.
4. They speak two languages in Canada.
5. They watch a lot of television in the United States.
6. They drink a lot of vodka in Russia.
7. They smoke big cigars in Cuba.
8. They drink a lot of coffee in Brazil.

**?**  
**Action**  
**Questions 82**

- *Yes, they are.*
- *Yes, they do.*
- *No, they're not.*
- *They're going to a restaurant.*
- *Yes, she is.*
- *Mr. Morgan is.*

**?**  
**Action**  
**Questions 84**

- *Yes, they are.*
- *They're already at their table.*
- *No, they're not.*
- *They aren't eating yet.*
- *Yes, he is.*
- *No, he's not.*
- *He's giving it to Mr. Morgan.*

 **Exercise 84**

1. Yes, they are. They're already at the restaurant.
2. No, he's not. He's not on the plane yet.
3. Yes, she is. She's already at the office.
4. No, she's not. She's not home yet.

 **Exercise 85**

1. He's giving her a letter.
2. She's writing her a postcard.
3. He's bringing them a bottle of wine.
4. He's showing her his apartment.
5. She's giving them coffee and tea.

 **Exercise 86**

1. What's she giving the salesclerk?
2. Who's he writing a letter to?
3. Who's bringing Mary some coffee?
4. Who's writing your mother a postcard?
5. What's she giving her brother?

 **Exercise 88**

1. b
2. a
3. c
4. b
5. a

 **Exercise 89**

1. Miss Santos is asking José to sit down.
2. Mr. Morgan is asking Janet to come into his office.
3. Mrs. Morgan is asking Peter to put down the matches.
4. Susan is asking John to hold the door for her.
5. Carlo is asking Janet to wait for him after work.
6. Mr. Duval is asking Marie to put the letter on his desk.
7. Mr. Morgan is asking Mary to bring him the newspaper.
8. Mary is asking Peter to give her the pen.

 **Exercise 90**

1. to
2. at
3. for
4. from
5. for
6. for
7. to
8. with
9. at
10. with

 **Exercise 91A**

1. ... don't bring me water!
2. ... don't speak Spanish!
3. ... don't go by bus!
4. ... don't leave today!

 **Exercise 91B**

1. They don't live in New York.
2. It doesn't cost \$30.
3. They don't speak Spanish in Tokyo.
4. She doesn't work as a waitress.

 **Exercise 92**

1. She's showing it to him.
2. She's giving it to her.
3. They're bringing them to her.
4. He's giving it to her.
5. He's bringing them to them.
6. He's showing it to him.

**Review  
Test 95-6**

1. a
2. a
3. b
4. a
5. a
6. a
7. a
8. a
9. c
10. b
11. b
12. a
13. b
14. a
15. a
16. a
17. c
18. b
19. a
20. c

**?**  
**Action**  
**Questions 97**

- *Yes, it is.*
- *Yes, it was.*
- *Yes, he is.*
- *No, he wasn't.*
- *He was at home.*
- *Yes, they were.*
- *No, they weren't.*
- *They were in France.*

 **Exercise 98**

1. No, he wasn't. 2. He was at home. 3. He was with his wife. 4. They were at their home. 5. Yes, they were. 6. He works at the Chicago office of Mr. Morgan's company. 7. No, he wasn't. 8. He was out of the country. 9. He was in Paris. 10. He was there on business. 11. No, he wasn't. 12. He was there for ten days.

 **Exercise 99**

1. It was at the airport for two hours. 2. He was on the phone for fifteen minutes. 3. I was at the office for eight hours. 4. It was closed for two days. 5. They were at the restaurant for two hours. 6. He was in New York for five days. 7. It was open for six hours. 8. She was at the store for twenty-five minutes. 9. We were out of the country for three days. 10. I was at home for two days.

**?**  
**Action**  
**Questions 101**

- *Yes, he was.*
- *No, he wasn't.*
- *He was at the office.*
- *Yes, there were.*
- *Yes, they were.*
- *There was a lot of traffic.*
- *There were a lot of tourists.*

 **Exercise 101**

1. No, he wasn't. 2. He was at the office most of the time during the day. 3. There were meetings all day. 4. Yes, they were. 5. Yes, there were. 6. There were a lot of tourists in Paris. 7. Yes, there was.

 **Exercise 102A**

1. was 2. Were 3. wasn't 4. were 5. Was

 **Exercise 102B**

Yesterday Mr. Morgan wasn't at home. He wasn't at the office, either. Where was he? He was in Paris. He was there on business. Paris was very crowded during the day. There was a lot of traffic, and there were a lot of people. Mr. Morgan was very busy. He was at the office all day. There were meetings all day.

 **Action Questions 103**

- *Yes, he does.*
- *Yes, he did.*
- *No, he didn't.*
- *He worked during the day.*
- *No, she didn't.*
- *She walked around the city.*
- *Yes, she did.*
- *That's right, she looked at the beautiful things in the shop windows.*
- *Yes, she did.*

 **Exercise 104**

1. Yes, he does.
2. Yes, he did.
3. He worked during the day.
4. He liked to relax in the evening.
5. She walked around the city, visited museums and looked at the beautiful things in the shop windows.

 **Exercise 105A**

1. ... he waited at the bus stop for ten minutes
2. ... he worked for a Japanese company
3. ... he was in New York
4. ... I watched television

 **Exercise 105B**

1. They visited Paris, but they didn't visit Marseille.
2. She learned French, but she didn't learn Spanish.
3. He worked at the office, but he didn't work at the hotel.

 **Action Questions 107**

- *Yes, they did.*
- *They went on Wednesday evening.*
- *No, they didn't.*
- *They got there by taxi.*
- *No, it didn't.*
- *It began at eight o'clock.*
- *Yes, they did.*
- *That's right, they enjoyed it very much.*
- *After the play they went to a restaurant.*

 **Exercise 107**

1. saw
2. was
3. watched
4. spoke
5. brought
6. put
7. listened
8. came

**Exercise 108**

1. I saw Bill three days ago.
2. The train left five minutes ago.
3. The bank closed twenty minutes ago.
4. You had lunch three and a half hours ago.
5. Mrs. Morgan went to a museum two days ago.
6. We got home fifty minutes ago.

**Exercise 111**

1. John went to Spain to learn Spanish.
2. The waiter came to our table to take our order.
3. Mr. Morgan went to Paris to see Mr. Duval.
4. Carlo called Janet to ask her to go out.
5. The Morgans are getting into their car to go home.
6. Mrs. Johnson took the bus to go shopping.
7. Mr. Duval called from Paris to talk to Mr. Morgan.
8. I went to the bank yesterday to get some money.

**Action Questions 112**

- *No, he didn't.*
- *He tried on the blue one first.*
- *Yes, it did.*
- *That's right, it was too tight in the shoulders.*
- *It was too tight in the shoulders.*
- *Yes, it did.*
- *They were a little too long.*
- *That's right, they were too long, but the tailor can shorten them.*

**Action Questions 113**

- *Yes, he did.*
- *No, he didn't.*
- *He was out to lunch.*
- *No, he can't.*
- *He can't come back at three.*
- *He can be there at six-thirty.*
- *No, he doesn't.*
- *He only needs about five minutes.*

**Exercise 114A**

1. ...I can; ...I can't
2. ...he can; ...he can't
3. ...he can; ...he can't
4. ...you can; ...you can't
5. ...she can; ...she can't

**Exercise 114B**

1. He can take the order, but he can't take it right now.
2. He can drive, but he can't drive a bus.
3. I can be here tomorrow, but I can't be here in the morning.
4. He can work late, but he can't work late tonight.
5. I can call you tomorrow, but I can't call you before noon.

**?**  
**Action**  
**Questions 116**

- Yes, he did.
- He went back to Macy's after his meeting.
- He spoke to the salesman first.
- Yes, he did.
- He took care of Mr. Morgan.
- Yes, he does.
- He needs three weeks to do the alterations.
- No, he didn't.
- Yes, he did.

 **Exercise 117**

1. ...didn't he
2. ...isn't he
3. ...didn't he
4. ...aren't they
5. ... wasn't it
6. ...didn't they
7. ...doesn't he
8. ...can't I
9. ...weren't they
10. ...don't they
11. ...can't I
12. ...didn't he
13. ...doesn't she
14. ...isn't he

**?**  
**Action**  
**Questions 119**

- Yes, he did.
- He went back to his salesman after he finished with the tailor.
- Yes, he did.
- That's right, he needed a tie to go with his new jacket.
- Yes, they were.
- They were on sale.
- That's right, he can buy two ties for \$10.00.
- He can buy two ties for \$10.00.

 **Exercise 119**

1. He went back to his salesman after he finished with the tailor.
2. He bought two ties.
3. They cost \$10.00.
4. He charged them.
5. It came to \$162.00 all together.
6. He gave him his receipt.

 **Exercise 120**

1. can
2. should
3. May
4. can't
5. May
6. should
7. can't
8. should

 **Exercise 121A**

1. Why did Mr. Morgan go to Macy's?
2. Why can't the tailor see me?
3. Why did you buy the ties?
4. Why does Mary like the dress?

 **Exercise 121B**

1. I took a train because the bus was too crowded.
2. Bill can't go to the movies because he's working late.
3. The alterations take three weeks because there's a backlog.
4. Mary doesn't have a car because she can't drive.

**Exercise 122**

1. He took it off.
2. She's looking at it.
3. He put it on.
4. Would you like to try them on?
5. They're waiting for it.
6. Please don't pick them up!

**Exercise 123A**

1. in
2. on
3. for
4. to
5. up
6. off

**Exercise 123B**

1. ended
2. into
3. picked up
4. buying
5. put on
6. late

**Action****Questions 126**

- *Yes, she is.*
- *No, she's not.*
- *She's going to be on vacation next week.*
- *No, she's not.*
- *She's going to go to California.*
- *No, she's not.*
- *She's going to visit her sister in California.*

**Exercise 127**

1. Yes, she is.
2. Tomorrow she's going to be at the office, too.
3. She's going to be on vacation next week.
4. She has three weeks' vacation every year.
5. She usually takes two weeks in the summer.
6. This year she's going to take her "summer" vacation in the spring.
7. She's going to visit her sister Carol.
8. She lives in California.
9. She likes to lie in the sand and just relax.
10. Janet's brother-in-law does.
11. She's going to go sailing on the weekends.
12. Yes, she is.

**Exercise 128**

1. ... I'm going to take a plane to Chicago
2. ... he's going to have tea with his breakfast
3. ... they're going to eat at home
4. ... she's going to be on vacation
5. ... I'm going to read a magazine
6. ... he's going to learn French
7. ... she's going to see a play
8. ... he's going to go sailing

**Exercise 130**

1. Do you want to see a movie tonight?
2. Can Mary speak French?
3. Does Janet like to go sailing in the summer?
4. Do you like to eat a big breakfast?
5. Do those customers want to wait?
6. Can Mr. Morgan see me tomorrow at ten?
7. Does Bill like to get to work early?
8. Does Mr. Tanaka want to go to New York next week?
9. Does Mrs. Morgan like to take long trips?
10. Can Mr. Duval see me next week?

**Exercise 131A**

1. She wants to go out, but she doesn't want to go out tonight.
2. I can type, but I can't type French.
3. He has to go home, but he doesn't have to go home now.
4. She likes to eat veal, but she doesn't like to eat veal for breakfast.
5. I can drive, but I can't drive a bus.

**Exercise 131B**

1. When does he like to read the newspaper?
2. Why can't Mary drink wine?
3. How many suits do you want to buy?
4. What color jacket do you want to try on?
5. Where do the children have to stay?

**Exercise 132**

1. earlier
2. more expensive
3. best
4. longest
5. more interesting

**Action Questions 133**

- *No, she didn't.*
- *She got there by bus.*
- *Yes, she did.*
- *She spoke to the doorman.*
- *Yes, he did.*
- *He told her there was a taxi stand around the corner.*
- *Yes, he did.*
- *He asked her if she needed help with her suitcases.*

**Exercise 134**

1. ... there was a taxi stand around the corner
2. ... there were always a few taxis there
3. ... he wasn't busy
4. ... she wanted to go to 3300 Wilshire Boulevard
5. ... she didn't need any help with her bags

**Exercise 135**

1. ... if he could help her
2. ... where she could find a taxi
3. ... where she wanted to go
4. ... if he could help her with her bags
5. ... how many suitcases she had

**Action Questions 139**

- *No, he won't.*
- *He'll see him on Friday.*
- *No, he won't.*
- *He'll see him in the morning.*
- *That's right, it'll last for about an hour.*
- *It'll last for about an hour.*

**Exercise 140**

1. It's 251. 2. He's with United Electronics. 3. He wants to speak to John Morgan. 4. She asked him to hold on. 5. He called to set up an appointment. 6. He can see him around nine-thirty on Friday. 7. He can't see him in the afternoon because he'll be busy all afternoon. 8. He asked her to put Mr. Blake down for an appointment on Friday morning. 9. She put it on Mr. Morgan's calendar. 10. He won't be in until eleven o'clock tomorrow because he has a doctor's appointment at nine-thirty. 11. Tomorrow at three he has a meeting with Henry Gibson. 12. After the meeting he's going to take him out to dinner.

**Exercise 142A**

1. He'll go to Chicago, but he won't take the train.  
 2. She'll take the bus, but she won't get off at Main Street.  
 3. I'll come to the office, but I won't bring my wife. 4. They'll come to the meeting, but they won't be early. 5. I'll visit you tonight, but I won't stay for three hours.

**Exercise 142B**

1. ... he won't call his office 2. ... she'll go shopping  
 3. ... I won't go to the movies 4. ... he'll come to New York

**Action****Questions 144**

- *No, he wasn't.*
- *Yes, she did.*
- *No, she won't.*
- *That's right, she'll give him the message when he gets in.*
- *She'll give him the message when he gets in.*
- *That's right, she'll tell him as soon as he arrives.*
- *Yes, she will.*
- *She'll ask him to return Mr. Morgan's call.*

**Exercise 145**

1. He wanted to speak to David Wilson. 2. He's with Zenith Exports. 3. She found it in the front of the phone book. 4. She called "Directory Assistance" to find out the number for Zenith Exports. 5. It's nine o'clock in California when it's noon in New York. 6. First she dialed the area code, then she dialed the number. 7. She spoke to the receptionist at Zenith. 8. She said: "Good morning. Zenith Imports and Exports." 9. No, he wasn't. 10. She gave her the phone number for Superior Products. 11. She'll give him the message as soon as he gets in. 12. He can call back anytime before five o'clock.

**Exercise 146**

1. looks
2. finds out
3. has
4. 'll call
5. answers
6. will give
7. arrives
8. returns
9. 'll pick up
10. will speak

**Action****Questions 148**

- No, he didn't.
- Yes, he did.
- He asked her to make a reservation for him.
- He asked her to make it for seven o'clock.
- Yes, he does.
- Yes, he is.
- That's right, he's going to take him to an Italian restaurant because he enjoys eating Italian food.
- He's going to take him to an Italian restaurant because he enjoys eating Italian food.

**Exercise 149**

1. It lasted over an hour.
2. Before leaving the doctor's office, he decided to call Janet.
3. He wanted to find out if there were any messages.
4. No, there weren't.
5. No, she didn't.
6. Janet is.
7. He wanted to go to an Italian restaurant because he knows Henry Gibson enjoys eating Italian food.
8. No, he couldn't.
9. He'll stop by the office after lunch.
10. After she hung up, she opened the phone book and looked in the White Pages under "F".
11. She found it under "R" in the Yellow Pages.
12. She made a reservation for two people.

**Exercise 150**

1. ... working late on Friday
2. ... seeing you tomorrow
3. Finding out John's phone number ...
4. ... going shopping
5. Arriving early ...
6. ... working hard

**Action****Questions 151**

- No, he didn't.
- He went back to the office.
- Yes, he did.
- Yes, he did.
- He asked her if anyone called.
- Yes, there were.
- Yes, she did.
- She told him there were some messages on his desk.



### Exercise 152

1. He went back to the office after finishing lunch. 2. She put them on his desk. 3. Someone called a couple of minutes ago. 4. No, he didn't. 5. She thinks it was Mr. Gibson. 6. He'll call him back right away. 7. They're working on an important contract. 8. She thinks he wanted to confirm the time of the appointment. 9. He wanted to eat dinner at seven. 10. She made it for eight-thirty. 11. She had to make it for eight-thirty because that was the only time available. 12. After calling Mr. Gibson, he's going to look through the other messages.



### Exercise 153

1. I guess so. I guess not. 2. I hope so. I hope not. 3. I think so. I don't think so. 4. I guess so. I guess not.



### Exercise 154

1. I guess he returned the call. 2. I guess he didn't remember to make a reservation. 3. I think he'll get to the restaurant by car. 4. I hope the restaurant won't be crowded. 5. I hope they'll enjoy their meal. 6. I think they're going to talk about the contract at the restaurant. 7. I guess he goes out to dinner often. 8. I don't think he'll be in the office tomorrow morning.